

Wellness Life Coach 1.0 Training Guide



John Andrew Williams
Amois Williams

1.0 Coach Training Guide

Copyright 2020 by John Andrew Williams & Amois Williams.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be used or reproduced without written permission, except in the case of taking brief quotations for use in classes or embedded in critical articles and reviews. If you want to present a chapter for a presentation, you have permission.

If you want to present more than a chapter,
please contact Coach Training EDU.

For more information, please visit
www.coachtrainingedu.com.

A publication of
Coach Training EDU
Portland, Oregon

January 2020

Table of Contents

Introduction to Wellness Life Coaching.....	7
Wellness Life Coaching.....	8
Life Coaching.....	13
Levels of Listening.....	25
Structured Improvisation.....	29
1: Unified Theory of Coaching.....	33
Hope Theory & Learn-Be-Do.....	34
Powerful Questions.....	40
Direct Communication.....	45
2: Design the Alliance	48
Knowledge vs. Empowerment Basis.....	49
Strategic Agenda.....	51
Meta-Coaching.....	55
Accountability.....	58
Asking Permission.....	61
Bottom Lining.....	64
3: Coach the Client, Not the Problem.....	66
Seek the Deeper Agenda.....	67
Intuition.....	72
Clearing.....	75
4: Client's Being.....	78
Exploring Character and Mindset.....	79
Acknowledgment.....	84
Core Motivation.....	86

5: Client's Learning	96
Meaningful Learning	97
Inquiry	102
Assessment Wheels	105
6: Client's Action	116
Well-Designed Actions	117
Brainstorming	123
7: Essential Coach Qualities	126
Essential Coach Qualities	127
1. Professional	128
2. Empathetic	131
3. Empowering	133
4. Curious	134
5. Courageous	136
6. Confident	138
7. Inspiring	139
8: Vision	141
Vision	142
Vision Recording	147
Flourishing in Flow	150
9: Assumptions	155
Assumptions, Beliefs, and Perspectives	156
Assumption Chart & Busting Limiting Beliefs	157
10: Perspectives	165
Perspectives	166
11: Values & Passion	171
Clarifying Values	172
Identifying Your Passions	177
Precise Mission Statements	179
12: Systems & Habits	182

Systems	183
Making Decisions	188
Nutrition	192
Coaching to Flourish Model with Nutrition	195
The Habit Loop	200
13: Motivation Styles	210
Motivation Styles	211
Exercise	219
Coaching to Flourish Model with Exercise	224
The Cycle of Self-Construction	229
14: Future Self	234
Future Self	235
15: Inner Critic	240
Inner Critic	241
16: Resilience	246
Metaphor	247
Bird's Eye View	250
Reframing	252
Challenge	255
Resilience Intelligence	258
17: Setting Reminders	267
Setting Reminders	268
Paraphrase	272
Championing	274
Sleep & Meditation	277
18: Future Pacing	284
Future Pacing	285
Jet Lag	287
19: Powerful Relationships	289
Powerful Relationships	290
Empathy	295

20: Leadership.....	298
Leadership Projects	299
Leadership with Core Motivation	303
Conclusion	307
Completion	308
Celebration	311
Thank You!	313
Acknowledgments.....	314

Introduction to Wellness Life Coaching

Welcome to your coach training program!

This introduction starts at the heart of coaching with a look coaching's core elements: the 3 Trusts, 7 Essential Coaching Qualities, and 7 Elements of a Coaching Session. The next sections—Levels of Listening and Structured Improvisation—point to the most important skill a coach employs: empathetic, active listening.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

All 7 are covered

Skill-Check Questions

What are the 3 Trusts and 7 Essential Coaching Qualities?

What is the difference between Level 1 and Level 2 listening?

Why does empathetic listening rely on a flexible and open mindset?

Wellness Life Coaching

Coaching to Flourish

The quest for human flourishing goes back to some of humanity's earliest writings. From ancient Greek philosophy to the development of the Humanities and social sciences, addressing the human condition and happiness has been a constant focus for centuries. Wellness coaching has roots in these traditions as well as in sports psychology and leadership development programs that became popular in the twentieth century.¹ Recently, theory from positive psychology - Hope Theory, Flow, Broaden and Build - has given wellness coaching an increasingly solid foundation.² In the past two decades research on topics of well-being has proliferated in diverse disciplinary fields, including aging and development, personality traits, family experiences, work and social engagements, health and biological research, and clinical mental health studies.

The Coaching to Flourish model starts with the latest research in positive psychology about models of well-being, from Carol Ryff's Six-Factors of Well-Being to Martin Seligman's Flourish, and it takes another step and looks at the structures and systems needed to achieve high states of well-being.³ Using a flower as a metaphor of flourishing (which shares the same Latin root *flor* meaning, literally, *flower*) provides a visual structure of the resources needed to thrive. Flourishing is seen not as an isolated event, but as an outcome of a much larger system.

You can use the Coaching to Flourish model as a guideline for working with clients through designed coaching sessions. Each part of the flower corresponds to a session and provides a focus for that particular session. As a coach, you have a choice in how you want to run your coaching sessions and use the Wellness Coaching Workbook with clients. Let's first look at the underlying theory of well-being and explore knowledge vs. empowerment basis of working with clients. Then, we'll look at each of the elements in the Coaching to Flourish Model.

Welcome to your wellness coach training!

¹ Gallwey, W T. *The Inner Game of Tennis*. Toronto: Bantam Books, 1979.

² Fredrickson, Barbara & Losada, Marcial. 2005. The Positive Affect and the Complex Dynamics of Human Flourishing. *The American Psychologist*. 60. 678-86.

³ Ryff, Carol D.; Keyes, Corey Lee M. 1995. "The Structure of Psychological Well-Being Revisited." *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*. 69 (4): 719-727.

Carol Ryff's Six-Factors of Well-Being

In the mid-1980's, positive psychologist Carol Ryff advanced a model of well-being that established a theoretical basis for defining flourishing in positive terms, not just the absence of negative factors.⁴ She identified six elements of well-being and identified a link between addressing the inner world of mental-emotional well-being to external evidence of flourishing. She termed these elements the Six-Factors of Well-Being:

- **Self-acceptance**

Self-accepting individuals maintain a positive perspective toward their present and past selves, acknowledging and accepting both their positive and negative personality traits. People who lack self-acceptance generally feel disappointed or dissatisfied with themselves, shameful about their negative personality traits, negative about their pasts, and wish they were different.

- **Positive relations with others**

People exemplify this dimension when they have trusting, intimate relationships with others that fulfill them, are empathetic and concerned about others' well-being, and make personal compromises to nurture external relationships. People who lack positive relations with others find it challenging to open themselves to intimacy and often feel frustrated in personal relationships.

- **Autonomy**

Autonomous people feel independent and confident in their personal perspectives and choices. They easily resist pressures in society for group thinking and action and evaluate their performance in life by personal standards and progress. Individuals that lack autonomy are often overwhelmed by anxiety about the evaluations of others, rely on others' perspectives to inform personal decisions, and easily conform to group-think pressures.

⁴ Ryff, Carol.D. 1989. Happiness is Everything, or Is It? Explorations on the Meaning of Psychological Well-Being. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology* 57(6): pp. 1069 - 1081.

- **Environmental mastery**

People with environmental mastery are able to juggle the complex details of work and home logistics with order and are able to integrate new, positive opportunities into their existing routines. People who lack this dimension struggle to maintain order in life, much less integrate new opportunities, and feel little control over external pressures and processes.

- **Purpose in life**

People with life purpose have clear life goals and actionable objectives that embody a sense of direction. They believe in their life's meaning and can articulate it clearly in the context of their past, present, and future. People who lack life purpose do not feel a sense of life's meaning and do not understand how their past life impacts the present and the future. They are unable to maintain goals or a sense of future direction.

- **Personal growth**

People who feel personal growth have a sense of continued learning and advancement of self and external knowledge. They feel this as a process of realizing their true potential that is continually evolving over time indefinitely. They welcome new experiences and can incorporate changes into their behaviors and perspectives as they cultivate knowledge and purpose. People who lack a sense of personal growth often feel stagnated in development and bored with life. They are uninterested in or incapable of developing new behaviors and perspectives.

Each of these elements of well-being, from self-acceptance to autonomy, naturally show up over the course of a coach-client relationship. As Ryff puts it: “Together, these topics illustrate flourishing interest across diverse scientific disciplines in understanding adults as striving, meaning-making, proactive organisms who are actively negotiating the challenges of life. A take-home message is that increasing evidence supports the health protective features of psychological well-being in reducing risk for disease and promoting length of life. A recurrent and increasingly important theme is resilience – the capacity to maintain or regain well-being in the face of adversity.”⁵

⁵ Ryff, Carol D.. 2014. Psychological Well-Being Revisited: Advances in Science and Practice. *Psychother Psychosom* 83(1): pp. 10 - 28.

Coaching to Flourish Model

As a life coach, you get to determine the level of structure you want to offer clients. You could use the wellness workbook designed for clients and travel through the program in the order of the exercises, or you could ignore the workbook altogether and focus on a more classic approach to a coaching session without the aid of predesigned coaching exercises. Or you could land on an approach in between these two extremes. The important point is that consider how you want to integrate the workbook and its exercises into your wellness coach practice. These are the planned coaching sessions exercises designed to empower your client and address the elements of well-being in the Coaching to Flourish Model:

1. The Seed [Session 1]: Cultivating Your Life's Work

Session One serves as an introduction as well as a clarification of the goal your client or workshop participant wants to achieve in the next three months. Explain and introduce the entire Coaching to Flourish Model, then choose a coaching exercise that sets the stage for the months to come. Coaching exercises include the Wheel of Life, Vision/Vision Recording, Future Self, Bird's-Eye View, and others that focus on where the client is now or wants to be in the future.

2. The Roots [Session 2]: Gather Nutrients & Release Toxins

Session two addresses how we gather nutrients. It's about putting down roots and tapping into nourishment and support. In session two, your client will embrace what serves them, and release what does not. Coaching exercises for Session two include Motivation Styles, Inner Critic, Assumptions Chart, Busting Limiting Beliefs, and Signature Perspective.

3. The Leaves [Session 3]: Sustainable Systems

Session three introduces systems and creating habits. Building on session two, you will work with your client to create systems, habits, and practices to address their relationship to stress. Coaching exercises for session three include Habit Redesign, Making Decisions, Future Pacing, Setting Reminders, Identifying Passions, and Mission Statements (which focus on aligning actions with intention).

4. The Stem [Session 4]: Exercising Resilience

Session four is about creating community, plans, and systems to recover from setbacks. It explores the story, strengths, and relationships in your client's life that they can use to bounce back quickly and grow strong. Coaching exercises include Core Motivation, Motivation Styles, Developing a Compelling Narrative, Reframe & Paraphrase, and Powerful Relationships.

5. The Flower [Session 5]: Creating Flow

Session Five sets the stage for flourishing. Imagine a flower bud, in all its perfection, ready to blossom. It is about creating a structure and a space to operate in a state of flow. In this session, your client will embrace the courage and vulnerability necessary to flourish. Session five exercises include Inner Critic, Future Self, Future Pacing, Setting Reminders, and the Cycle of Self-Construction.

6. Flourishing [Session 6]: Celebrating Your Life's Work

Session six addresses the entire metaphor of the flower (seed, roots, leaves, stem, and flower) and celebrating your client's wholeness. It is about celebrating them living their life's work. Session six looks at sharing your work in benefit and service to other people. It also looks to the next stage of refinement and cultivating a lifestyle of flourishing. Coaching exercises for session six include Self-Alignment, Acknowledgement, Challenge, Celebration, Designing the Future, as well as revisiting the Wheel of Life and the Cycle of Self-Construction.

The next section explores the Essential Coach Qualities that form the foundation of life coaching. These are the qualities that a certified life coach demonstrates in every coaching session to ensure that a coach works with a client from an empowerment basis. These qualities align with core competencies, a series of action steps and checkpoints designed by coaching organizations who have created standards that form the backbone of the coaching profession.

Life Coaching

Life coaching is a professional relationship between a client and a coach designed to help the client increase self-awareness, generate learning, and identify and accomplish meaningful goals. Over the past thirty years, life coaching as a profession has flourished. With the radical changes ushered in by the Information Revolution, life coaching developed to meet the need of people to live lives with more intention, to clarify goals amid a sea of options, and to make more effective decisions on how to spend time, energy, and resources. Based in humanistic psychology and drawing from many different sub-disciplines ranging from leadership development courses to sports psychology, life coaching and its core ideas have become increasingly supported by positive psychology studies and theory.⁶ Coach Training EDU's model of life coaching is based on Hope theory: the study of how intentionally addressing both agency and pathways can make a measurable difference in performance.⁷ As the science and practice of coaching continue to develop, coaching concepts are weaving themselves more and more into the fabric of our society and influencing the way we approach learning, work, health, and well-being.

Life Coaching is so effective because it puts the client at the center of the process and trusts in the client's brilliance to overcome challenges. Coaching differs from consulting in that a coach does not advise or offer solutions for the client. Coaching differs from therapy in that life coaching does not focus on the past or offer a diagnosis. Coaching differs from mentoring in that mentoring attempts to link someone learning a craft with someone who is already skilled in it. On a pragmatic level, coaching helps clients recognize and identify their capabilities, as well as craft action steps to achieve goals, and design ways to stay accountable and resilient in the face of setbacks. On a deeper level, working with a coach or going through a coach training program transforms you as you mindfully explore your own ingrained assumptions, limiting beliefs, and ideas of identity. The most effective coaches, research finds, are as dedicated to their own self-understanding and development as they are to their clients'.⁸

Central to the practice of coaching is relying on the three coaching trusts: trust the client, trust yourself, and trust the process. The remaining chapter examines these three trusts and the related seven essential coach qualities of an effective life coach. We then will have a chance to

⁶ Brock, Vikki. 2014. Sourcebook of Coaching History, 2nd ed.

⁷ Snyder, et al. 2002. Hope and Academic Success in College. *Journal of Educational Psychology* 94(4): pp. 820-826.

⁸ Welch, et al. 2014. Strengths-Based Leadership Development: Insights from Expert Coaches. *Consulting Psychology Journal: Practice and Research* 66(1): pp. 20 - 37.

look at some of the reasons why coaching is effective before outlining each of the seven elements of a coaching session. As you continue to explore the profession, you are invited to lean into curiosity: try out the concepts in your work with others, as well as in your own life.

What

The Three Trusts

1. Trust Your Client.

Trusting your client means being empathetic: listening to such a degree that you imagine you are the client. You have to trust that the client has all the inner and outer resources at hand to overcome whatever challenge they are facing. From such a stance, you empower your client to set the coaching session agenda, guide the direction of the session, and design action steps.

2. Trust Yourself.

Trusting yourself points to the power of your own curiosity as a coach when you actively listen empathetically. As you listen, you will sense glimpses of certain ideas and emotions. Your job as a coach is to trust your natural curiosity. When you ask yourself what you are genuinely most curious about, and trust in your intuition, you will find yourself asking questions that raise your client's awareness in powerful ways. Your job then is to have the courage to ask uncomfortable questions and to speak to the hard areas when you think it's going to be the most useful to your client.

3. Trust the Process.

Trusting the process allows you as a coach to develop a strong sense of confidence and safety in the energy of your coaching sessions. You are comfortable with your client's emotion, even actively going deeper into the feelings, looking to draw out meaningful insights. Trusting the process allows you as a coach to coach the client, not the problem, and to expect that the power of insight will provide clarity on what action steps your client needs to take. Action steps that arise from increased awareness and are well-designed to achieve certain outcomes are exciting. A coach inspires a client's effective

action by trusting the process and crafting all the useful work of a coaching session into meaningful action between coaching sessions.

The 7 Essential Coach Qualities

A coach must display each of these competencies at all times during a coaching session, from setting the coaching session agenda at the beginning of a coaching session to designing action steps toward the end. The 7 Essential Coach Qualities are briefly described below, including example scoring questions for each that an evaluator might use to assess a coach's skill. Chapter Seven in this text further explores each of these qualities in more detail.

1. Professional

A coach sets ethical coaching agreements with clarity and cultural awareness. The central aspects of this competency are establishing clear expectations between the coach, client, and sponsor (if present); maintaining confidentiality; designing an alliance; and addressing accountability.

Skill-Check Questions:

“How well did the coach clarify expected outcomes or address accountability on a client's recent action steps?”

“How well did the coach use the T.I.M.E. model when setting a strategic or session agenda?”

2. Empathetic

A coach actively listens empathetically, using imagination and intuition while staying curious and attuned with a client to pick up on even subtle shifts in a client's emotion. An effective life coach asks questions designed to provoke insight rather than gather information for the coach's sake.

Skill-Check Questions:

“How well did the questions provoke new insights for the client, as opposed to seeking information or implying solutions?”

“To what degree did the coach recognize subtle shifts in a client's energy, tone, or perspectives?”

3. Empowering

A coach sees the client as the expert on their own life, inviting the client to be proactive in crafting both the coaching session agenda and eventual action steps. In this sense, a coach is a guide who empowers the client's own leadership. A coach offers expert knowledge with curiosity to empower the client, and adapts coaching tools to fit the client's unique situation.

Skill-Check Questions:

"How well did the coach focus on the client, not the problem?"

"How well did the coach balance expert knowledge and information with empowering the client?"

"How well did the coach adapt the client's language and adjust standard coaching questions and tools to fit the client?"

4. Curious

An effective coach remains curious, even when clients experience strong emotion or realize epiphanies. A skilled coach keeps an open mind and asks questions that lead to new insights, exploring a deeper agenda when looking at the session topic. A coach uses Powerful Questions that are short and open-ended (usually starting with *What*, *Why*, or *How*), and the coach invites the client do most of the work of uncovering insights in a coaching session.

Skill-Check Questions:

"How well did the coach ask short, open-ended questions using a balance of Learn-Be-Do questions that addressed a client's agency and pathways?"

"To what degree was the coach willing to lean into intuition while staying curious and holding space for the client to explore?"

5. Courageous

A coach creates a safe space and demonstrates connection and vulnerability, while also at times being fierce, and sometimes asking uncomfortable, but priceless, questions.

Effective coaches model courage during coaching sessions to set the stage for their clients to do the same.

Skill-Check Questions:

“How well did the coach address prickly points, ideas, or observations? (Either directly or through sharp questions.)”

“To what degree is the coach willing to take risks and share intuition and ideas without attachment to being right?”

6. Confident

A coach is confident in the client, inviting the client to do much of the work of exploring ideas and emotion in a coaching session. A coach trusts the coaching process and embraces pausing and silence while holding space for the client to arrive at useful action steps. Strong coaches show confidence that their client can build appropriate accountability.

Skill-Check Questions:

“How well does the coach demonstrate trust in the coaching process and comfort with pausing and silence during a coaching session?”

“To what degree does the coach trust that the action step will come from the client if sufficient learning and insight happens?”

7. Inspiring

An effective coach helps clients discover inspiration within themselves and use it to power their journey of self-development. A coach inspires clients to take bold actions between coaching sessions while balancing learning with action steps by designing ways to help clients stay accountable and follow through on action steps.

Skill-Check Questions:

“How effective was the coach at helping the client develop inspiring Well-Designed Actions?”

“To what degree does the action (pathways) also include aspects of Learning and Being (agency)?”

Why

Everyone loves a good listener, especially if that listener keeps the attention on you and keeps asking outstanding questions. So, it makes sense that people love working with life coaches, people who are literally trained (and hopefully certified) to be professional listeners. As a participant in a life coach training program, it's important for you to experience first-hand the benefits of coaching to get an idea of what truly provides value from the client's perspective. People gain tremendous value from simply processing ideas and emotions out loud, and working with a coach is a great excuse for a fresh start.⁹ Having someone help you determine what's most important in your life, design action steps, and hold you accountable is going to have some sort of positive impact on your life. And when that person is trained, operates within a theoretical framework grounded in positive psychology, is skilled in the essential coach qualities, and has a toolbox of effective exercises, the client's experience of coaching becomes that much more impactful. The following section examines a few of the major theoretical pillars that form the foundation of life coaching to give a sense of why the profession is so effective.

A. Trust in the client on the journey of personal and professional growth.

The pursuit of knowledge and understanding of the highest aims of a human being have captured the attention of people for centuries. Humanistic studies can be traced back to Socrates and other ancient philosophers. While the Renaissance led to a revival of many ancient ideas, such as exploring the human experience and potential, the field of humanistic psychology arose in the 1950's in response to psychoanalysis and behaviorism. Humanistic philosophy and psychology posit that everyone inherently wants to do well, and that a holistic approach is the best way to address challenges.¹⁰

One of the most recognized concepts in humanistic psychology is Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs. In *Motivation and Personality* (1954), Abraham Maslow theorized that at our core, each of us strives for self-realization, the full realization of our potential to be human. Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs points to the importance of having foundational resources

⁹ Grant, A. M. 2003. The impact of life coaching on goal attainment, metacognition, and mental health. *Social Behavior and Personality* 31(3): pp. 253-263.

¹⁰ Maslow, A. H. 1954. *Motivation and Personality*. Addison Wesley Longman, Inc.

in place to experience higher levels of well-being.¹¹ He also emphasized the usefulness in shifting focus away from pathology to looking at beneficial traits of being healthy.

C.R. Snyder introduced the concept of Hope theory in the mid-1990s.¹² Hope, he proposed, is the product of strong agency and the ability to develop and follow pathways to achieve goals. Agency is looking at what you believe about being capable of creating a goal. Based on your past, do you think you can accomplish what you are going to accomplish? Or based on what you think you can learn, do you think you can accomplish what you want to accomplish? Pathways are the steps, the links between actions and results. They're the strategies you design to execute a plan toward achieving a goal. Practical research using Hope theory in athletes, academics, and other fields has demonstrated that hope is measurable, and—even more importantly—you can actively grow it to increase your capabilities of achieving goals.

In *Emotional Intelligence*, Daniel Goleman outlines five important skills for managing one's own emotions and establishing healthy, strong relationships.¹³ Such emotional skills balance the rational stream of thought and can be better indicators of success than tests designed to measure logic or knowledge acquisition. Goleman's work underlines the importance of the inner work of self-understanding, as well as developing stamina and skill to be more empathetic.

B. Increased awareness of executive functioning provides a structure to explore elements of human flourishing.

Carol Ryff's 1989 advancement of theory in practice is acknowledged as a landmark work in positive psychology research and kicked off decades of positive psychology research. Ryan and Deci (2001)¹⁴ cite Ryff (1989)¹⁵ as foundational in the field of eudaimonic well-being research, as opposed to hedonic well-being research. Her work marked a shift in approach from the hedonic pursuit as a proxy for happiness to a more holistic model of

¹¹ Ibid.

¹² Snyder, C.R. 1995. Conceptualizing, Measuring, and Nurturing Hope. *Journal of Counseling and Development* 73(3): pp. 355 - 360.

¹³ Goleman, D. 2005. *Emotional Intelligence*. Bantam.

¹⁴ Ryan, R. M. and E. L. Deci. 2001. On Happiness and Human Potentials: A Review of Research on Hedonic and Eudaimonic Well-Being. *Annual Review of Psychology* 52: pp. 141-66.

¹⁵ Ryff, C.D. 1989. Happiness is Everything, or Is It? Explorations on the Meaning of Psychological Well-Being. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology* 57(6): pp. 1069 - 1081.

eudaimonic well-being. Hedonic-focused research is measured by pain avoidance and pleasure attainment, whereas eudaimonic well-being research emphasizes meaning and fulfillment. The eudaimonic well-being research that Ryff kick-started uses self-realization, fulfillment, and meaning to understand optimal human functioning. The Greek term “eudaimonia” is defined as “the feelings accompanying behavior in the direction of, and consistent with, one’s true potential.”¹⁶ In *Flourish*, psychologist Martin Seligman identified five elements of well-being, and arranged them in the handy acronym PERMA: Positive emotion, Engagement, Relationships, Meaning, and Achievement.¹⁷ Each element in PERMA is desirable, pursued for its own intrinsic value, and can be measured individually. The PERMA model posits that when all elements are sufficiently present, well-being or flourishing occurs.

C. Clients tap into the benefits of positive emotion and scheduling time to experience flow.

Barabra Fredrickson, in her book *Positivity*, outlines the benefits of tapping into positive emotion as a way to broaden one’s agency while building more capability to meet increasingly difficult challenges.¹⁸ Coaching helps clients design ways to stay engaged in meaningful work and more mindfully experience an increasing skill set. Fredrickson's theory ties into Mihaly Csikszentmihályi’s work, which describes a state of performance where level of ability matches level of challenge¹⁹. Flow is a state of engagement when someone is immersed in the present moment, completely focused on the task at hand, and performing or working at an optimal level. Focus with a clear goal, instant feedback, and a challenge that pushes a skill set are three of the conditions most conducive to flow. When an individual engages in an activity that pushes the boundaries of their performance, skill levels increase. Flow requires ever-increasing challenges to match the ever-increasing skill set. Much like the psychological equivalent of Wolff’s Law, which states that the body adapts to the load under which it is placed, someone who experiences flow will adapt to the challenges that are present.²⁰

¹⁶ Waterman, A. S. 1984. *The Psychology of Individualism*. New York: Praeger.

¹⁷ Seligman, M. 2011. *Flourish*. Free Press, A Division of Simon & Schuster, Inc. New York, NY.

¹⁸ Fredrickson, Barbara. 2009. *Positivity: Top-Notch Research Reveals the 3-to-1 Ratio That Will Change Your Life*. Three Rivers Press. New York, NY.

¹⁹ Csikszentmihályi, M. 1975. Play and Intrinsic Rewards. *Journal of Humanistic Psychology* 15(3): pp. 41-63.

²⁰ Stock, Jay T. 2018. Wolff's Law (bone functional adaptation). John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

D. Life Coaching helps clients to use both growth and fixed mindsets to develop increasingly empowering perspectives that lead to effective action.

In her book *Mindset: The New Psychology of Success* (2006), psychologist Carol Dweck made an important distinction between two common mindsets based on an individual's perspective on talent and ability.²¹ A fixed mindset points to innate talent as the source of ability. Someone with a fixed mindset would agree with the statement “everyone has a certain amount of talent.” They would argue that a person's level of talent is fixed but that it can be increased within a certain range. The upside to a fixed mindset is confidence and a short-term boost in effort. The downside is that a fixed mindset can cause a person to avoid mistakes at the expense of learning as they attempt to prove their talent or natural ability.

A growth mindset points to effort and persistence as the source of ability. Someone with a growth mindset would agree with the statement, “Success depends 1% on talent, 99% on perspiration.” The downside of a growth mindset is how rare it is. The upside is that people who have a growth mindset put more attention on effort, developing stamina, and learning from success and mistakes. Mistakes are seen as an excellent chance to learn. Goals become more about creating a focus point and ensuring continued effort than a way of proving talent.

Individuals with a growth mindset are more likely than those with a fixed mindset to continue working and putting in effort, even in the face of challenges and setbacks. From the perspective of a growth mindset, talent is simply the starting point, and failure and success are feedback for continual improvement. While a fixed mindset views maximum potential as measurable and knowable (such as earning a 100% on a test), a growth mindset rejects the idea of a known full potential. From a growth mindset, potential is unknowable and continually increases with feedback and effort. The effectiveness of coaching relies on a coach's ability to help clients shift toward a growth mindset as they take on increasingly challenging goals.

E. Effective development of action steps.

Behaviorism points to the importance of a cue in the environment prompting a certain learned action, which ultimately leads to a reward. This cue-action-reward system forms our understanding of habits and provides clues regarding how to create habit change.

²¹ Dweck, C. S. 2006. *Mindset: The New Psychology of Success*. Ballantine Books. New York, NY.

Habit and behavior change theories can inform coaches on which areas are useful to explore when helping clients identify and change habits.²² Designing those habits and systems with a coach is a tremendous opportunity to take a struggling area and make it thrive. In this training program, you will learn how to help clients establish well-designed actions and create systems to add structure conducive to behavior change. Accountability is a huge part of what makes a coaching relationship powerful and helps clients follow through on their well-designed actions.

How

7 Elements of a Coaching Session

A standard coaching session is 30 to 60 minutes in duration and includes these 7 elements:

1. Connecting (About 2 minutes)

Description: This is your opportunity to connect with your client and continue to build rapport and trust.

The purpose: To greet each other and set the space. It's important because it establishes a safe space for coaching and allows the client to clear away any distractions and get focused on the present. It's also your first opportunity to gauge the energy your client is bringing to the session.

Useful coaching questions: How has your week been? What's something exciting or new that's happened since our most recent session? What are you looking forward to most in this upcoming week?

2. Accountability (About 3-7 minutes)

Description: This is your opportunity to follow up with your client on their actions from your previous session together.

The purpose: To explore follow through with your client, which can reveal their commitment to themselves, to others, to projects, and to their goals. Making space for accountability at the beginning of a session provides a strong framework and sets a good

²² Duhigg, Charles. 2014. *The Power of Habit: Why We Do What We Do in Life and Business*. Random House. New York, NY.

habit for both the coach and client.

Useful coaching questions: How did your action items go from our last session? To what degree were you successful with your actions from our last session? What got in your way of following through? Who do you need to be to follow through next time?

3. Session Agenda (About 3-5 minutes)

Description: This is the topic for the session, as well as the importance of the topic, and how success will be measured for the session.

The purpose: To create focus and clear criteria for determining the success of the session. Having a strong agenda sets the foundation for a productive coaching session and provides the infrastructure to come back to when your client takes tangents or seems to be getting away from what they wanted to accomplish.

Useful coaching questions: What would you like to discuss today? What would you like to focus on today? What area of your life would you like to be even better?

4. Exploration (About 20-40 minutes)

Description: This is where coaching skills, tools, and exercises are brought to the coaching session.

The purpose: To leverage coaching skills, tools, and exercises that increase the client's awareness of themselves. This is the portion of the session where the coach explores with the client their Learning and Being, using the agenda as the foundation for exploration.

Useful coaching questions: What are you learning about yourself? Who do you need to be to make this happen? What do you need to learn to move in the direction you want to go? What character traits do you need to draw from within yourself?

5. New Actions and Accountabilities (About 5-10 minutes)

Description: This is when you co-create well-designed actions with your client, which become the accountability topic for the next session.

The purpose: To transform the learning from the coaching session into tangible action. Co-creating well-designed actions with clients empowers them to be resourceful, drawing on their own knowledge and experience. It empowers them to become the expert on themselves.

Useful coaching questions: What action would you like to take based on what you

learned today? What's the very first step toward moving in that direction? When will you have this action completed? What might get in your way of taking this action?

6. Agenda Check-in (About 2 minutes)

Description: This is a check back on the original agenda to determine the success of the session.

The purpose: To empower the client to acknowledge the growth they experience, and for you to determine your own success as a coach. It is also another opportunity to build accountability into the coaching relationship.

Useful coaching questions: How did we do today? To what degree did we accomplish our original agenda for today? What do we still need to explore?

7. Logistics for Next Meeting (About 2 minutes)

Description: This is your opportunity to plan the details of your next session, including date, time, and location (if necessary).

The purpose: To minimize the back and forth in planning the next session. Discussing the logistics of the next session at a time when your client just experienced a successful session is the most likely moment for them to choose to continue with coaching as well.

Useful coaching questions: What day and time works well for our next session? How frequently would you like to meet?

Levels of Listening

What

The most common distinction made in listening is whether someone is paying attention or not. Listening occurs when someone is hearing the words and making sense of them. Paying attention is required to listen, but in life coaching an important distinction is made by examining the perspective of the coach in attending to the client's words. The perspective the coach takes as a listener matters, and empathetic listening has a measurable positive impact on the person who is speaking.^{23 24} Those different perspectives make up the three modes of listening:

- **Level 1 listening is listening for the sake of yourself**

Level 1 is when the coach listens for the sake of themselves. It is necessary and useful when the coach is learning something and needs to know how it applies to their own life. When a coach is in Level 1 listening, they are often asking themselves the following questions when the client is talking:

- Is this is really going to be useful for me?
- Oh, that reminds of me of that time when [fill in the blank].
- When is it going to be my turn to talk?
- How does what this person is saying apply to me?
- I wonder what I could say to look really good right now?

- **Level 2 listening is listening from the perspective of the person speaking**

²³ Bodie, G. D. 2011. The Active-Empathic Listening Scale (AELS): Conceptualization and Evidence of Validity Within the Interpersonal Domain, *Communication Quarterly*, 59:3, 277-295.

²⁴ Myers, S. 2000. Empathic listening: Reports on the experience of being heard. *Journal of Humanistic Psychology*, 40, 148-173.

It also relates to empathy, and coaches who are skilled at empathetic listening are able to effortlessly offer their own intuition and curiosity for the sake of the client.²⁵ Still, Level 2 listening goes further than just empathy (being able to identify correctly the emotion the client is feeling) to experiencing what the client is saying from their point of view. Such deep listening is powerful and gets the coach's interests out of the way.²⁶ It forces the coach to be much more present and focus on what the client is really saying and feeling.

- **Level 3 listening is listening from the perspective of an outside observer looking in on the conversation**

For a coach, listening in Level 3 feels as if they are standing on one side of the room listening to the client speaking, listening to the coach's own words, and asking themselves the questions, "How does what is being said relate to my client?" or "If I were an outsider watching this coaching session, what would occur to me?" It is a powerful exercise to help the coach understand that communicating this deeply influences and shapes the conversation. At first, it can seem surreal or artificial, but with practice, it becomes comfortable for the coach to step outside the conversation to observe the interaction between coach and client, yet be fully present with the client.

Why

Why Level 2 and Level 3 listening are more effective in coaching than Level 1 listening:

A. Level 1 listening is not as effective in serving clients as Levels 2 and 3.

People listen in Level 1 most of the time. However, it can be easy for us to naturally slip into empathetic listening. For example, when a manager and employee are talking and listening deeply to one another, this can move into Level 2 listening, which better serves the speaker because it promotes deeper understanding and connection.

²⁵ Cissna, K.N. and R. Anderson. 1994. Communication and the ground of dialogue. In R. Anderson, K.N. Cissna & R.C. Amett (Eds.), *The reach of dialogue: Confirmation, voice, and community* (pp. 9-30). Cresskill, NJ: Hampton Press.

²⁶ Stewart, J. & C. Logan. 2002. Empathetic and dialogic listening. In J.S. Stewart (Ed.), *Bridges, not walls: A book about interpersonal communication* (8th ed., pp. 208-229) Boston: McGraw-Hill.

B. Level 2 listening is a gift to the speaker.

For the coach, it feels like you are in flow with your focus on your client's every word, while also gathering the larger meaning and listening between the lines. Such a quality of listening is an acknowledgment that what the client is saying is so important that the coach is eager to put 100% of the focus on the client. It is rare in everyday life that clients have someone dedicated to listening to them with the intention to seek deeper understanding from their point of view. Clients feel heard, which is an incredibly powerful and rewarding experience for them.

C. Level 2 listening takes practice and requires focus.

In most life coaching sessions, a coach will primarily be in Level 2 listening. Two things often happen when we start coaching. The first is that a coach realizes how challenging it is to stay in Level 2 listening. New coaches tend to think about the next question to ask, or get caught up in the client's story and think about a similar story in their own lives. Coaches also might be so concerned with doing the coaching "right", and become more concerned about their performance than the client's experience.

D. Level 2 feels good.

The other phenomenon that happens with new coaches is that they will slip into Level 2 for an extended period of time. It feels amazing. It feels like they can really understand the client on a deeper level and get lost in the client's words. In Level 1 listening, a coach is essentially listening to two people because they're focusing on what the client is saying, while also processing their own internal dialogue. Level 2 listening is incredibly freeing, because a coach is listening only and wholly to the client. It is a tremendously creative and fulfilling experience for a coach.

E. Level 3 uses a third perspective.

Level 3 listening is an important way for the coach to attend to the client-coach relationship. It helps the coach think about the conversation from a different perspective and point of view to make sure that they are strengthening the relationship and the professional bond. It is a chance to shift slightly and expand focus to be an even more effective listener for the client.

How

An effective coach is self-aware and skilled in choosing the mode of listening that is going to be the most useful to the client.

1. How to listen in Level 2:

- Begin by paying close attention to the words that your client is saying.
- Allow yourself to listen so closely that you could say the same words silently to yourself as your client says them. When you are listening that closely, it feels like an intense form of concentration. Allow your thoughts to be centered on the client.
- Ask yourself, “How does what this person is saying apply to them?” and allow yourself to be curious for the client’s sake.
- If you find that you have slipped back into Level 1, simply consciously return to Level 2. At times, Level 2 listening feels like you are constantly recovering from Level 1 back to Level 2. Such an experience is okay, as long as you remember to consistently recover. Gradually, you will find it easier to be in Level 2 with your client for longer periods of time.

2. How to listen in Level 3:

- Begin by listening deeply to your client in Level 2.
- As you are listening, ask about something you are curious about.
- When your client answers your question, imagine that you are on the other side of the room, both listening to the client and watching yourself listen to the client.
- Ask your client another question, and try to stay in that third-person point of view. It may feel a lot like mental gymnastics at first, but as you get used to thinking and listening in this way, you will find it to be incredibly powerful in helping you to actively listen.

Structured Improvisation

What

A strong structure, i.e., a clear session agenda, action steps, and accountability, gives you, the coach, increased flexibility to play with ideas, take tangents, and follow your client wherever your client wants to explore. Such exploration functions like improvisation. Improvisation is the skill of fully partnering with your client to co-create the coaching experience. It requires being comfortable with the unknown and dancing with the unforeseen. It has two primary rules (which are more like guidelines):

1. Accept what is offered.

2. Add value.²⁷

The same rules apply in improvisational acting. There is no script, but there is a structure. One of the first rules of improv acting is the “Yes, and” rule. In Improv 101, whenever your acting partner offers an idea, you reply with “yes, and”, and add to the scene.

Life coaching (and life, for that matter) operates effectively on these same two guidelines. A coach does not know what is going to happen in any session, or how the client is going to be when they show up. However, the coach is open to accept whatever the client offers, and the skill of coaching is to go with whatever comes up. Such mental flexibility requires you as a coach to be grounded in the present moment, and confident that you can dance with whatever comes up. When you learn to trust yourself, your client, and the coaching process, coaching feels easy, effortless, and immensely fulfilling because you know your client is receiving tremendous value.

The opposite of accepting what is offered is called blocking. Blocking denies the client’s idea or the premise of the scene. It can be direct: “I don’t think that idea will work.” However, it is most effective if the coach uses blocking or accepting consciously and for a purpose. Far too often in a school, family, or business setting, people block out of habit.

In a life coaching session, it is essential for a coach to accept what is offered. Yet having a structure behind accepting the offer, and adding value to it are equally important. The structure behind accepting the offer is for a coach to hold the focus on the client’s agenda, ask powerful questions, and use any other life coaching principles and exercises that apply.

²⁷ Hines, W. 2016. *How to be the Best Improviser on Earth*. Pretty Great Publishing.

Why

A. Structured improvisation works well because it mirrors the natural flow of experience.

Something comes up. A coach has a choice to block it and actively work against it. Or, the coach can accept it and use it for future action. Sometimes it is best to block. Other times, it is best to go with what the client wants.

B. Being flexible while having a useful structure is ideal.

The life coaching process contains a balance between flexibility and structure, and it is one of the reasons coaching is so effectively employed in a myriad of personal and professional situations.

C. Structure provides freedom.

Clients become stressed when a system they are using cannot handle the demands placed on it. “Stress” originates from a technical term meaning the strain placed upon a certain material, such as steel used in a bridge. A steel beam can easily support a great deal of weight, but when it reaches a certain point, it becomes stressed and begins to bend. Hans Selye, who first observed that homeostasis could not protect organisms from outside pressures, introduced the concept of stress into everyday vocabulary.²⁸

D. Structured improvisation leads to changing methods, tools, and systems.

When dealing with stress, most clients rely on the same methods, tools, or systems that they use every day - they just try working harder. This is the “I’ve just got to try harder” method, and it may work for the client. It certainly requires the least amount of creativity to solve the immediate problem. However, in the long run it would be so much more effective for the client to take time to create new methods, tools, and systems to sustainably handle more work. This is possible through structured improvisation. Essentially, the core life coaching principles form the structure for clients to handle

²⁸ Fink, G. 2010. Stress: Definition and history. Stress Sci. 3-9.

whatever comes up in their life and work. The stronger the structure, the more the client and coach can handle.²⁹

E. Improvisation is unusual in most conversations.

In a conversation, most people are thinking, “How does this apply to me?” It’s a perfectly reasonable way to listen to someone and relate to other people based on our experiences. However, in a coaching setting, the coach can accept what the client brings and build from it. When a coach can effectively improvise, it adds value to the conversation and works with what the client is already thinking, augmenting it with the coach’s natural curiosity.

How

The best way to master structured improvisation is to practice. The core coaching principles and the coach training sessions will give you the structure that you need to be a competent and confident coach. The challenge is how to get into the habit of accepting whatever your client brings to the coaching session.

1. Accept what your client says.

Judgment gets in the way. Judgement usually comes in two forms: either judging what your client is saying, or judging yourself as a coach. This is especially true when coaches judge about how well they are doing, or how great their questions are, or what value their clients are getting out of the process. Allow your precious focus and energy as a coach to remain completely on your client.

2. Offer a question based on what you just heard.

A helpful technique is picking out the most interesting word from what your client just said, and building your next curious question around that word. For instance, if we were to pretend that a coaching client said something similar to the paragraph above, we could create a question based on the word “judgement,” such as “What’s the impact of judgment in your life?”

²⁹ Yodo, N. and P. Wang. 2016. Engineering Resilience Quantification and System Design Implications: A Literature Survey. *Journal of Mechanical Design* 138(11).

3. Stay curious.

Your natural curiosity will provide a fruitful path forward for your client. You can trust your curiosity—and Level 2 listening—to move your client forward.

4. Have in the back of your mind one of the concepts in the coach training program.

Build your next question based on one of the concepts in the program. For instance, if you're working through a Wheel of Life, you can ask your client about the relationship between two areas on the wheel.

5. Bounce back and forth between following the client and following the concept.

As you continue to work with your client, Structured Improvisation requires bouncing back and forth between following the client on tangents led by your curiosity, and using the concepts of the program to inform your intuition on what to ask next.

1: Unified Theory of Coaching

Chapter Overview

Hope theory is the foundational theory that Coach Training EDU uses to ground coaching in positive psychology.

This section looks at the theory, as well as two core skills a coach uses during a coaching session: powerful questions and direct communication.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Professional, Empathetic, Curious, Courageous

Skill-Check Questions

What are the elements of Hope Theory, and how do they play into a coaching session?

What are the elements of a powerful question?

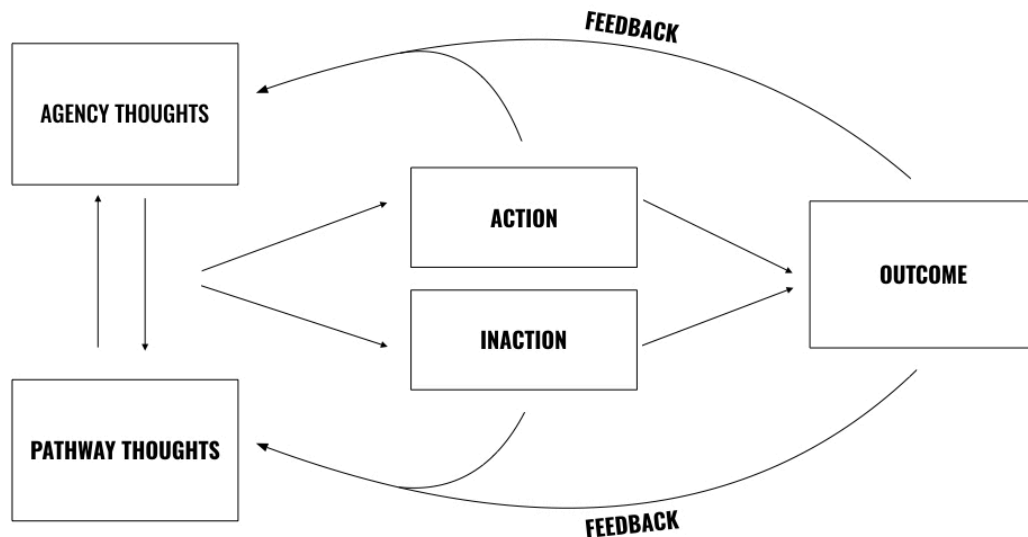
How do I use direct communication as a coach?

Etymology

Unified comes from the two Latin words uni-, meaning one, and -fied, which comes from the Latin verb facere meaning to do or to make. A unified theory relates individual elements to each other in a way that provides a deeper understanding of both the individual pieces and the synthesis of the whole.

Hope Theory & Learn-Be-Do

Several theories have had a deep influence on the ideas that form the foundation of coaching. Drawing from pieces of humanistic psychology, from Abraham Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs and the pursuit of meaning and self-actualization, to Carol Dweck's Growth Mindset, the number of theories and conceptualizations of human decision making and goal achievement is vast. These elements offer a strong foundation for the efficacy of coaching. Out of the plethora of theories, Hope Theory, as developed by C.R. Snyder, stands out. It excels in its ability to explain the efficacy of the coaching model from both the coach's and the client's points-of-view. The model also aligns neatly with the Learn-Be-Do categorization of questions that has been a key concept Coach Training EDU has woven throughout its coach training courses for the past decade.



C.R. Snyder offers the following definition of Hope Theory: “Hope is a positive motivational state that is based on an interactively derived sense of successful (a) agency (goal-directed energy), and (b) pathways (planning to meet goals),” (p. 287).³⁰ He split motivation into four different aspects: agency, pathways, goals, and obstacles.

The first aspect includes the assumptions you have about who you are and what you can learn. In terms of Hope Theory, this aspect is called *agency*. One of the characteristics that distinguishes a seasoned coach from an inexperienced coach is the degree to which the coach uses challenges

³⁰ Snyder, C.R. 1995. Conceptualizing, Measuring, and Nurturing Hope. *Journal of Counseling and Development* 73(3): pp. 355 - 360.

and setbacks as opportunities to explore what the client is learning about themselves, as well as what character traits the challenge is addressing. In other words, an experienced coach asks about a client's *agency*. In Hope Theory, agency is defined as one's belief in their ability to learn the required knowledge and use or gain the required skills to achieve a goal. Many life coaching exercises, from the *Future Self* to the *Inner Critic*, apply tools to help clients take different approaches to and develop a deeper sense of agency.

The second aspect is what action plan you think is worth the effort to achieve the goal. In Hope Theory, this aspect is termed *pathways*. Pathways are the routes you map to reach your goals. Time is the landscape on which you map your pathways. Snyder explains that time is a continuum of past, present, and future, and we tend to think about time as a line. To construct a pathway, someone links sequential actions from their present toward their cognitive construction of a future goal. People who are very hopeful tend to be very confident in their pathways, and their pathways tend to be well-articulated. If one pathway doesn't work, hopeful people can construct another one to reach their goal. On the other hand, people with low hope levels struggle to identify clear pathways. Because the pathways aren't clear, it is hard to commit to them fully, and if they don't work, it's easy to throw in the towel.

The next element of Hope Theory is goals. This includes three different stages. The first stage is the preliminary decision-making process of which goals to consider, and the value of the possible outcomes. This stage includes the learning, assumptions, and experiences of the past mixed with hopes, dreams, and fears of the future. The next stage occurs during the action steps themselves, when you are immersed in the process of working toward a goal. During this stage, we measure our actions by the degree to which they achieve our desired results. This leads us either to stay engaged or even increase our engagement, choose to take a break, or decide to disengage. The final stage is reflection and learning. It is marked by the absorption of experiences that happen when the results tumble in. This final stage feeds back into ideas and assumptions about agency and possible pathways, completing the cycle and starting it anew.

Goals can range from lofty (such as introducing and cultivating coaching concepts in the way we learn, work, and live) to simple (such as completely cleaning the office desktop). We can consider goals through agency, pathways, and the value of the outcomes over the course of decades or in the blink of an eye.

The final element of Hope Theory is the obstacle. Borrowing from Mihaly Csikszentmihalyi's Flow Theory, obstacles are *necessary* for the process of optimal experience. Without some kind of challenge, one can't slip into the optimal experience ("flow"), where one's skill set matches the challenge at hand, envelops awareness, and is intensely satisfying. When obstacles confront us,

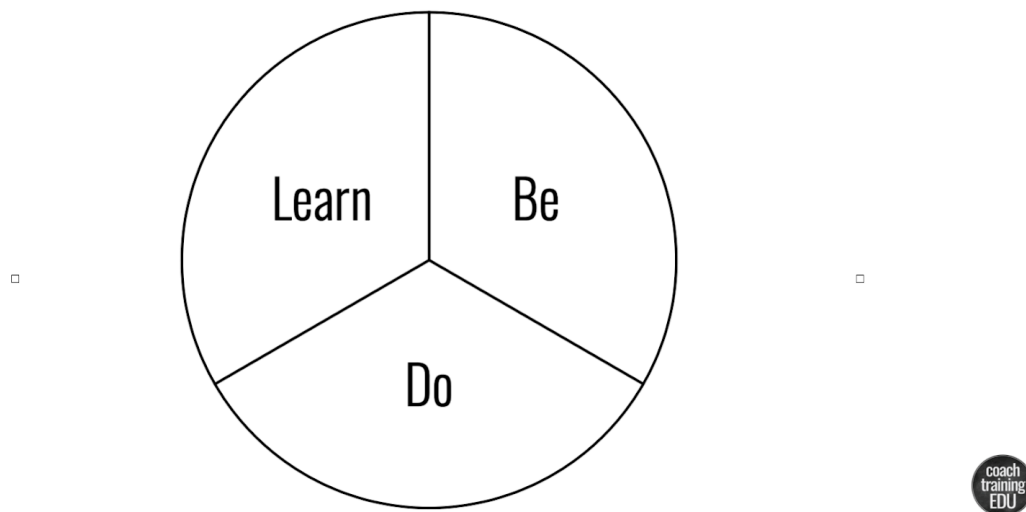
Hope Theory helps us look at how ideas and emotions about our agency and pathways interplay to either increase or decrease our engagement.

Hope Theory as a Unified Theory of Coaching

The magic begins when you consider the interplay between agency and pathway in all stages of motivation and the elements of coaching. Coaching excels at helping clients make better decisions and improve the quality of the decisions they consider. During coaching sessions, clients explore their ideas and assumptions about their own expectations, perspectives, skills, limiting beliefs, and mindsets. They mindfully craft action steps and accountability. When working with a skilled coach, a client learns to address their empowered assumptions about agency, and to clarify options and insights about possible pathways to reach their goals.

Over the past decade, Coach Training EDU has adopted a Learn-Be-Do model of categorizing questions, giving coaches-in-training a framework for the kinds of questions that are useful while coaching. This framework aligns well with the aspects of Hope Theory. Indeed, each framework gains depth when combined with the others.

Coach Training EDU's Model of Question Categories



Learning points primarily to the insights clients have about who they are and what they are capable of achieving. From this perspective, a coach might ask a client, “What are you learning about yourself (in this moment, or in the current situation)?” Learning also involves the strategies and action steps required to achieve a goal. An example of a coaching question that

includes learning would be: “What new skill is this challenge requiring you to develop?” When incorporated into Hope Theory, Learning most heavily lines up with agency and pathways.

Being, as a category of coaching questions, refers to the characteristics your client already has or wants to develop. Being also includes the energy a client brings to a project, assumptions about their abilities, as well as assumptions about what new achievements mean to their identity. A common coaching question might be: “What would this accomplishment mean to how you think of yourself and your character traits?” When meshed with Hope Theory, Being lines up with agency, goals, and obstacles.

Doing refers to the action steps taken toward the goal, and the systems a client puts in place to work toward it. Usually toward the end of a coaching session, a client will design an action step to implement before the next coaching session. The coach and the client then co-design how best to help the client stay accountable and incorporate the insights gained from the coaching session into their implementation of the action step(s). A typical questions would be: “Based on everything we covered in our session, what are a few action steps that come to mind that you want to take in the next two weeks?” When applied to Hope Theory, doing lines up with pathways, goals, and obstacles.

**CTEDU +
Hope Theory**

**Obstacles=
Opportunities
for Learning**



Hope Theory & Learn-Be-Do in Action

Let's use the theoretical linkage between Hope Theory and Learn-Be-Do to see what this practically looks like when you apply it during a coaching session. We'll quickly review the first 6 of the 7 Elements of a Coaching Session (the last element is to set the logistics for the next session), and we'll look at how Hope Theory and Learn-Be-Do play a role in each element.

1. Connection

Connection is greeting your client in a way that resumes your rapport with them, while establishing a safe space for your coaching session. This part leads either to checking in on past actions (Accountability) or to setting an agenda for your current coaching session (Set the Agenda).

2. Accountability

Accountability looks at what your client accomplished since the previous coaching session. It is the practice of reflecting on previous goals and pathways to create insights and learning that inform your client's sense of agency and ideas of new pathways.

3. Set the Agenda

Agenda Setting is your client's chance to take control of the coaching session. On a deep level, it empowers a client to articulate an immediate, tangible goal. In the Hope model, you are asking your client to clarify a goal that has an impact on your client's agency.

4. Exploration

Exploring Learning and Being Using Coaching Tools is usually the bulk of every coaching session. Your client has an opportunity to address ideas and emotions around agency, which include aspects of exercises such as *Empowered Perspectives*, *Busting Limiting Beliefs*, managing *Inner Critics*, or tapping into insights from the *Future Self* exercise. Learning and Being is woven into the tapestry of the interaction between thoughts and feelings about agency, goals, and possible pathways.

5. New Actions and Accountability

Using the insights from the previous exploration, it's time to craft action steps. This element of a coaching session focuses on pathways and goals. Your client has the opportunity to craft action steps to complete between now and your next coaching session.

6. Agenda Check in

Checking in on Session Agenda and Logistics for Next Session completes the 7 Elements of a Coaching Session. This does not necessarily have a direct parallel in Hope Theory or in the Learn-Be-Do model, but both elements are an important part of completing a coaching session and clarifying when you will meet again.

Powerful Questions

Powerful questions form an essential part of the coaching skill set. This coaching skill relies on empathetic, active listening to craft meaningful, curious questions that provide tremendous value to the client. Powerful questions are effective because they invite a client to shift the way they perceive themselves in the context of a question or challenge. Such questions have the power to reveal possibilities that the client maybe never considered, or perhaps assumed were unattainable. When employed with the rest of the coaching toolkit, powerful questions can trigger both self-reflection and motivation, which serve as the foundation for a client's agency to build pathways toward their goals.

What

Powerful questions are short, direct, open-ended questions that are designed to elicit insight and learning, as well as motivation to follow through with action. Powerful questions have the following characteristics:

- **Open-ended, start with the words *What, Why, or How* (and sometimes *Who, Where, and What if*)**

Powerful questions are usually fewer than ten words. They are direct in that they cut to the heart of the matter. Powerful questions usually start with the words *What, How, When, Where, or What if*, and lead to thought-provoking answers. This contrasts with closed-ended questions, which result in “yes” or “no” answers that provide only limited information and insight. Closed-ended questions typically start with the words *Is, Do, Does, Will, Are, or Have*.

- **Provocative and exciting to answer**

Powerful questions also have a certain force about them that make clients want to answer. They are usually questions that may have been roaming around in a client's mind, but haven't been fully addressed or asked directly. Neither the client nor the coach knows the answer to the question until it is asked, but it's a great question for the client to consider and hear themselves answer.

- **More than facts**

Powerful questions are not merely about factual knowledge or information, but rather they address thoughts, habits, and emotions that may not have any known right or wrong answers. When a coach asks a powerful question, the client has an opportunity to deepen learning and to see what's most important to them. It's a chance to try out ideas and see which ones have the most energy. It is also a chance for the client to explore an emotion or use one's imagination to conjure up how great it will actually feel to reach an accomplishment.

- **Based on curiosity**

All powerful questions are based on empathetic curiosity. These are questions that invite the client to become more self-aware and confident about the action that they want to take.

Why

A. Powerful questions give the client space to create a solution.

The ideal solution for a problem comes from the client directly. Sure, general guidelines exist for what constitutes effective time management or the steps in building a successful business; however, the solutions to the deepest problems - and the ones most worth solving - come from within. The force of a powerful question comes from the invitation the coach offers to the client to explore what is really going on from their point of view.

B. Powerful questions are short.

Brevity is beautiful, and it focuses the client's mind on one topic without too much extra information in the way. The shortness of powerful questions also lends to creating space for the client to explore. As a coach, you want the client to speak nearly 90% of the coaching session.

C. Powerful questions inspire creativity.

Most powerful questions start with *What* or *How*. Being open-ended allows the client the chance to be creative with the answer, and gets the coach out of the client's way. The

coach's job is to tap into a client's natural curiosity about themselves, and point the client in a direction that they haven't looked at before. By asking an open-ended question, the coach stimulates the client's creativity and curiosity to explore and add value to the coaching relationship.

How

Powerful questions require practice. It takes some time to get used to asking a question, then falling quiet to give space for your client to answer. Try to resist the urge to ask two questions at once, ask a question that is too long, or add a long explanation.

1. Tap into your natural curiosity while listening empathetically.

When listening, imagine you *are* the other person. Get into your client's world. Then ask yourself what you would be most curious about *if you were your client*. You can trust your innate curiosity to guide you.

2. Start your question with *What, How, Why, Who, or What if*.

"Why" questions can be great, but use them wisely, since they could put your client on the defense. For example, it may be very insightful to ask, "Why is that important to you?" However, asking, "Why would you do that?" could cause the client to feel like they need to be defensive. Instead, try asking, "What reasons led you to do that?" The latter doesn't question the client's character, but instead comes from a place of curiosity to learn more about the circumstances of the situation.

3. Keep your question simple and brief.

When practicing powerful questions, challenge yourself to create questions that are ten words or less. Leave out any explanation of your question, and avoid restating the client's previous response.

4. Just ask one question, then pause.

Give your client time to think and be introspective. It may feel like an uncomfortably long time in silence, but that's okay. From a client's point of view, having that time to think and form thoughts is priceless. Keep in mind that it is likely that your client has

never been asked questions like these before, so getting comfortable with silence will be key.

5. Listen empathetically to your client's answer.

Repeat steps 1-4 by using some of your client's language to craft your next powerful question. Bring to mind coaching models such as Learn-Be-Do and Hope Theory, as well as the other elements in coaching exercises found in this book, to inform your next question.

Examples of Powerful Questions

What Questions

- What do you want to work on today?
- What is most important to you?
- What is the biggest change that you need to make in yourself?
- What is the benefit?
- What is the cost?
- After you accomplish this outcome, what is the next step?
- What stops you from getting what you want?
- What do you need more of in order to achieve your goals?
- What do you need less of?
- What causes you the most fear?
- What are you learning — or do you hope to learn — about yourself?
- What values are most important to you?
- What specifically about that value is exciting to you?
- What is your ideal solution?

How Questions

- How important is that to you?
- How do you know it will be successful?
- How does that solution feel?
- How do you know?
- How can you be sure?
- How can you develop [character trait] in yourself?
- How is your action aligning with your intention?

Why Questions

- Why or why not?
- Why do you want to move forward?
- Why is it holding you back?
- Why do you want to learn this about yourself?
- Why does this perspective come up in that moment?

Who Questions

- Who do you want to become?
- Who do you most admire?

What If Questions

- If you could change just one thing, what would it be?
- What happens if you fail?
- What if you knew you would not fail?
- What if you had all the resources you needed?

Direct Communication

What

Communication is about sharing ideas and information. Direct communication is the skill of being able to clearly communicate and illustrate ideas. Life coaches have the ability to provide tremendous value by using several tools to communicate directly with clients. Direct communication has several different components:

- **Information**

The original idea, emotion, thought, or other information (i.e., the message a life coach wants to communicate). Although it can be a risk, a coach can call out a client's behavior during a session. This can lead to further exploration and some great coaching. For example, if a client answers "I don't know" a lot, or changes the subject when you try to dig deeper, bring up that observation without judgment, and utilize it as an opportunity to coach around that observation.

- **The sender's intention**

When people are communicating information, there is both the actual message and the intention, or how the sender wants the message to be understood.

- **The method**

The sender has a variety of choices about the method they use to send a message that communicates directly. The next section outlines many of the methods a life coach can use to communicate directly to the client.

- **The recipient's understanding**

The meaning of the message is some blend of the sender's original thought and what the recipient understands. Basing communication on the client's understanding is useful when thinking about developing the method and content of the message.

- **The relationship**

There is always some relationship between the sender and the recipient. The designed relationship of coach and client allows for more direct communication.

Why

A. Clarity cuts through confusion.

Direct communication sends a clear message. Such clarity aids a client in cutting through the excuses, limiting beliefs, and worn-out habits to focus on what is truly important.

B. Empathetic listening creates safety and the ability to fine-tune understanding.

Direct communication is incredibly powerful because a coach in Level 2 listening is able to adjust communication for the client's understanding. The coach can ask the client powerful questions to ensure that the message has been understood in a way that aligns with the coach's intentions.

C. Taking a risk as a coach shows courage and builds the coach-client relationship.

From a life coaching point of view, direct communication is not just communication for the sake of sharing ideas. It also acts as a method for the coach to strengthen the coaching relationship.

How

1. Identify the message you want to share with your client.

The first step in direct communication is being mindful of both the message you want to communicate, and your intention for how you want your client to understand it.

2. Make sure you are in Level 2 listening.

Taking a moment to ensure you are listening in Level 2 listening - truly imagining you are the other person in the moment - helps you deliver the idea effectively and with compassion.

3. State your idea as clearly and simply as you can. Then ask a short question.

You want to avoid folding an idea into a question that acts like a suggestion. For example, it's not as effective to ask, "Do you think it'd be good idea to plan out your week every Sunday night, or at least have a weekly planning time to go over your work load?" Instead, you could state, "I think you need to have a weekly time to plan." And follow with a question, "What do you think?"

4. Closely watch the reaction of your client.

A strong life coach maintains awareness of the client's experience. By continuing to listen empathetically, you can hold the space with curiosity. It takes courage to share, and even more to hold the space for someone to process a challenging idea.

5. Ask a follow-up question.

It could be as simple as "What do you think?" Or "What was it like to hear that idea?"

2: Design the Alliance

Chapter Overview

A skilled coach creates clear expectations for coaching and space to mindfully design an empowering coaching relationship that fully empowers the client.

This session explores how the coaching exercises Design the Alliance and Setting the Strategic Agenda add to the effectiveness of the coach-client relationship. It concludes with looking at two coaching tools: Bottom Lining and Asking Permission.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Professional

Skill-Check Questions

What are the characteristics of an effectively designed alliance?

What are the four elements of a strategic agenda and why do they matter?

When would a coach use Bottom Lining or Asking Permission?

Knowledge vs. Empowerment Basis

Design the Alliance is a set of agreements, both explicit and implicit, on the logistics, focus, and tone of a coaching relationship. Because the context of your coaching sessions has an impact on the quality of your coaching, it is important to establish how you and your client will work together. It consists of the details and steps a coach takes to ensure that the client-coach relationship is strong, and the environment of each session allows the client to feel comfortable taking risks and being courageous. When the coach and client establish a strong relationship and space in which the client can take risks, the client's courage naturally emerges. The coach is merely a facilitator who sets the stage for the client to perform and discover.

The foundation of your work - the balance between a knowledge and an empowerment basis - is an extremely important aspect of the client-coach relationship. It needs to be addressed at the beginning of your client choosing to work with you as well as when you design an alliance with your client. Let's explore each of these two different models of providing value that have an impact on all the other elements of your coaching.

The first approach is the knowledge basis, in which the specialist knows the resources, information, and next steps the client needs to take. Consultants, therapists, nutritionists, sleep specialists, doctors, and personal trainers operate from a knowledge basis. It's how they provide value. Their knowledge directly helps patients or clients craft food or exercise plans.

A coach, however, operates from a different basis. While it's common for a coach to have outside expertise in a specific area, a professional coach relies on powerful questions and other coaching exercises, such as *Assessment Wheels* and *Assumptions*, to help clients arrive at their own insights. Most often people know - or at least know where to start to find the answers to - what they need to do. The first challenge is in getting started, finding a sustainable pace, and building a robust and resilient system. Life coaching excels in exploring each of these areas. The journey empowers clients to gather necessary resources and discover characteristics and aspects of themselves that they will treasure.

As a consultant using coaching methods, or as a coach who also has to deliver knowledge-based information, the challenge is balancing both approaches. It can be awkward to constantly try to avoid sharing advice or offering action steps that you know have worked well for other clients in similar situations. There may be times where you have information about available resources or useful steps that your client could take. When you choose to share this information, you will want to do so carefully so you're not creating a dependent or reliant coaching relationship. Again, the real skill is in being able to balance working from both a knowledge basis and an empowerment

basis when working with clients. The core tenet that separates coaching from counseling, therapy, advising, personal training, and any other field of expertise is the idea that the client is the expert, complete and whole, without any broken parts that need to be fixed. The coach and the client should come as equals in the relationship. The coach's role is to draw out the client's own knowledge.

Bringing this distinction into the conversation around designing your alliance allows you to lay out clear expectations about the nature of consulting or advising versus coaching. This is an essential part of a strongly designed alliance, especially if you choose to leverage a workbook or worksheets in your coaching session. Having a workbook or set coaching program is a powerful marketing and organizational tool, but must be used in balance with fully empowering the client to direct the goals and the tone of the coaching session.

This chapter looks at the elements and the theoretical foundation of a designed alliance between a coach and a client. The three major aspects of a designed alliance in a coaching relationship are: setting the strategic agenda, meta-coaching, and accountability. This chapter concludes by looking at Asking Permission and Bottom Lining as additional coaching tools that you would use rarely as a coach, but that are helpful to have in certain situations.

Strategic Agenda

What

The strategic agenda is the overarching reason a client is seeking out coaching in the first place. A well-designed strategic agenda is utilized at the beginning of each session, and has four elements: the *topic*, why it is *important*, how you will *measure* the success of that session, and the *echo*. This is the T.I.M.E. model.

- **TOPIC**

The topic is what you are actually going to address in the session. Most of the time, clients come to coaching sessions with something in mind they want to discuss. Sometimes, they may struggle to pinpoint or articulate it. It's your job to ask questions that elicit a topic from the client that gets at the foundations of what they want to work on. It's best not to overthink this step, but it's an important step to include in each of your coaching sessions. The trap is to assume both you and your client have an implicit understanding of what you want to focus on. Asking the client to say the topic out loud acts as a foundation for the rest of the session.

- **IMPORTANCE**

The next step is to explore the meaning behind the topic. Your job is to look at the degree to which this topic matters. Exploring importance is also a way to gain a sense of the impact and value coaching brings to the client. This simple exploration might yield a deeper agenda or an aspect to the topic that matters deeply to the client. Uncovering meaning is often a jumping off point to explore the deeper learning that awaits a client in the session.

- **MEASUREMENT**

Perhaps the trickiest, but nevertheless useful element, is a well-crafted way to measure the success of the strategic agenda. Measurability adds depth and tangibility to your pursuit. A common way of measuring the success of a strategic agenda is defining a certain number of achievable action steps. At other times, coming up with a way to measure increased clarity or a meaningful perspective presents a challenge. My favorite

way to add measurability to an intangible element such as "increased clarity" is something along the lines of "an insight so good you feel the urge to write it down." Sure enough, during the session or near the end of the session you know that you've accomplished your session agenda when a client is taking notes.

- **ECHO**

The final piece of the strategic agenda is restating the agenda as a yes/no question. This is typically the only yes/no, closed-ended question you want to ask in the entire coaching session. Every question before and after the agenda is best if it's open-ended and starts with *What*, *Why*, or *How*. It's best if your echo uses the exact words of your client and is as simple and straightforward as possible. The purpose of the echo is to confirm that you and your client are on the same page about the topic, its importance, and how you'll measure success.

Why

Setting a solid agenda for your coaching session is the single most important task you can do to ensure a successful session. The session agenda acts as a foundation for you to come back to whenever it seems useful. The more structured the beginning of a session, the more freedom you have to explore tangents, client's learning, different perspectives, and ways of being. You can immediately relate what's currently happening in the session to the original agenda for fresh insights.

How

Setting a session agenda is the most formulaic and scripted portion of a coaching session. It's best to keep the questions simple. Even if you asked questions identical to those listed as examples, you'd provide a solid and useful foundation for your coaching session. Here are some sample questions for each component of the T.I.M.E. model:

1. Topic

- What do you want to focus on today?
- What would be useful for you to look at today?

- What would you like to spend our time on today?
- What could we look at today that would radically change your life?
- What would be the most useful thing to look at in the next 30 minutes? (or whatever timeframe you have)
- What part of your life would you like to be even better?

2. Importance

- If we were to accomplish the agenda today, what would change in your life?
- If we were successful today, what difference would it make?
- How is this agenda connected to other areas of your life?
- How meaningful is this agenda?

3. Measurement

- How could we measure the success of our session?
- How many action steps do you want to design?
- To what degree would finding, exploring, and naming a new perspective be enough?

4. Echo

- Example: Just to be clear, you want to focus on crafting a new, empowering perspective, and we'll know if we're successful today when you feel like the insights are so good you need to write them down?
- Example: So today it'd be useful to design a new routine for when you get home for the day, and we'll know we're successful if we have three clear action steps?

When echoing the agenda to your client, you're looking for a clear and emphatic "yes." Anything less, such as hesitation, mumbling, or tweaking of words from your client means that you need to ask a few more questions to clarify the agenda and echo again.

While the Topic always comes first and Echo always completes the process, sometimes Importance and Measurement might switch places. For example, if it seems natural to ask about Measurement right after the Topic, go for it. You can then ask about the meaningfulness of the

topic and echo back to the client. The most important aspect of setting the agenda is moving through all the elements quickly and efficiently, while also listening for opportunities to later ask about deeper and bigger agendas.

Meta-Coaching

What

Meta-coaching is the part of designing the alliance where you talk about coaching and the coach-client relationship. It provides the chance to clarify everything about the coaching process, as well as address possible assumptions your client is making that might be getting in the way. Many people who first hear about coaching are unsure of what coaching is all about. The challenge that most clients face in looking at coaching is the admission that something is wrong about them or that something is missing. Addressing these assumptions, clarifying what coaching is, and deciding how you will work together allows for a deeper partnership much earlier in the coaching process.

- **Confidentiality in the coaching relationship**

Rarely are two people so open about how they want a relationship to function. By addressing the relationship itself, both the coach and the client set precedent for being transparent and open. This openness forms the foundation of trust and allows the client to take risks and be courageous in self-exploration. A professional coach has an ethical obligation to address client confidentiality, and to keep coaching conversations, topics, and descriptions private unless the client grants permission to share. Such openness, coupled with confidentiality between the coach and client, creates a safe space for the client to explore important and meaningful topics.

- **Agreements on using specific coaching strategies, exercises, or workbooks**

As the coach-client relationship develops, a sense of respect emerges. Such respect demands that both the coach and the client are honest and value the coaching relationship. The coach can also let the client know that they may occasionally challenge them to think and act in ways outside of their comfort zone, that they may interrupt them in order to stick to the agenda, and that they may share their thoughts and intuitions even if it may not be easy for the client to hear. The risks taken by the coach need to be done respectfully, with the intention of moving the client forward.

Some other agreements you will make with your client are around cultural sensitivity, how you might use coaching exercises, worksheets, and workbooks, and expectations around communication outside of the coaching session, as well as logistical details of where you will meet, how long sessions will be, the physical environment in which the coaching will take place, and how you will communicate with a sponsor or guardian.

Why

A. A professional coach has an ethical obligation to accurately describe and prepare the client for what to expect from life coaching.

The chief aim of any designed alliance is to help the client understand their role in the client-coach relationship, and to work to mutually support the coach in designing the best relationship possible. When the client is proactive and understands that they also have the power to make the coach more effective, the designed alliance becomes strong. The client understands and takes responsibility for the strength of the relationship. Allowing clients to be proactive in establishing the coaching relationship sets a precedent for them to be proactive in other areas of their lives as well.

B. Establishing a strong coaching relationship creates the overall frame that will drive all the work that the coach does.

A well-designed alliance instills confidence in your client. It empowers them to see themselves as an equal partner along the coaching journey. Throughout the coaching process, clients understand the style of their coach, as well as the types of questions the coach typically asks. In essence, the client becomes trained in a deeper understanding of the steps they can take between sessions to get the most out of the coaching relationship, and what is needed to make the relationship work.

C. Designing the Alliance ensures that both the coach and the client are on the same page from the beginning, which only increases the effectiveness and possible outcomes of the coaching relationship.

Being on the same page does not mean that the coach is the boss or knows more than the client. Being on the same page means that the coach and the client understand where both the coach and the client are in the client-coach relationship, where the client currently is, where the client wants to go, and what they want to achieve.

How

Your main objective in the designed alliance is to get on the same page with your client, and keep the conversation channels open about what you can do better as a coach.

- 1. Start by talking about what an alliance is, and what you hope to get out of the exercise (such as "being on the same page").**

- 2. Go through the prompts, and design your relationship with your client:**

- What best motivates you?
- How do you move into action?
- What requests do you have of me?
- What do you think I should know?
- What's working so far?
- What's not working so far?
- How will you know that coaching has been successful?
- How do you want to treat confidentiality?
- How do you want me to help with accountability?
- Do you prefer more heart or more heat?
- Where would you like to meet for our session?
- What's the best way to communicate between sessions?
- What type of support are you looking for between sessions?

Accountability

What

Accountability is when a coach checks in on the action that the client decided to take between coaching sessions. As a tool, it helps the coach manage a client's action, and from the client's perspective, it can be a powerful tool to keep them moving forward on actions. Accountability, at its best, also serves as a structure to measure the effectiveness of a client's action and the systems the client has in place. Here are the components of accountability:

- **Measurable result based on well-designed actions**

Accountability has a clear and measurable result.

- **Time set to take the action**

Accountability often includes a plan of when the client is going to take the action.

- **Time set when action is complete**

Accountability also has an end point or a due date for the action.

- **Direct communication**

Accountability has a time and method for letting the coach know that the action was taken. Usually this is an email, text, or voicemail, or it can be a check-in at the beginning of the next session.

Why

A. Gives structure to action.

Accountability is effective because it serves as a benchmark and a structure for the client to gauge the success (or failure) of an action. It uses well-designed actions as a baseline for measurement.

B. Provides feedback on the system.

Systems are crucial to success. Accountability is as much about a client following through on specific actions as paying attention to the learning and effectiveness of a system that is in place.

C. Manages motivation.

The coach's expectation that the action will be undertaken can be wonderfully motivating for the client.

D. Strengthens the coaching relationship.

Accountability is also an opportunity for the coach and the client to redesign their alliance to best serve the client. If a client is having a hard time following through on accountabilities, it is an opportunity for the coach to address this issue in the context of the coaching relationship.

How

- 1. As an extension of meta-coaching, you have an opportunity to design with your client the most useful way to hold themselves accountable.**

The first place to start is with curiosity about the systems your client currently has in place, and how effective those systems are.

- 2. Determine the balance of accountability between you and your client.**

You have options with how often you reach out to clients, and how available you are to connect between coaching sessions. Your availability and willingness to be available plays a role in how you design responsibility for the accountability between you and your client. Some coaches actively reach out to clients. Other coaches ask clients to actively reach out to them. Whatever the design, it's helpful to address the balance directly.

- 3. The same principle holds true regarding how you design to use a program or workbook and life coaching exercises.**

You and your client design the balance and ways to track follow through.

4. If you find that your client is generally following through and taking action steps between sessions, it is a great idea to explore the elements that are working so well.

You could ask your client to come up with a three-step plan to help others achieve the same success in follow through. Inevitably, insights and places to explore emerge from such a thread of curiosity.

5. If you find that your client is not following through, you have a few options as a coach.

The first option is to use your client not following through as a place to explore and mine for even deeper insights. There might be value in a client experiencing the raw emotion of admitting that they did not follow through on a promised action step in a life coaching setting. Whatever ideas or emotion come up for the client, it's useful to explore.

The next place to explore is to directly address your client's relationship to accountability. You could ask questions such as, "How do you want to relate to accountability in your life?" "In what way is accountability useful?" "In what way is it useless?" A useful perspective to take as a coach when following such a coaching thread is to seek an insight that has even more value than if your client had followed through on the action in the first place.

6. Determine how your client wants to be held accountable.

Do they want to email, text, or just check in at the beginning of next session? There is no industry standard for how involved or distant a coach is. This balance is between your client holding themselves accountable and you as a coach holding them accountable.

Asking Permission

As part of Designing an Alliance between a coach and a client, Asking Permission is a crucial skill to establish a true partnership. In the typical flow of a coaching session, the session coaching agenda is set early in the process. After an agenda is set, a coach usually has an idea of what coaching tools to use. Asking permission to use a tool, or asking your client which direction they want to take during the session, nurtures the relationship and cultivates a sense of co-creating the coaching experience.

Asking permission is useful in addressing something personal with your client. It is your acknowledgment and respect for your client's courage and input on which direction to take the coaching session. For example, you could say, "I acknowledge your courage to bring up this topic. Would it be ok if I asked some questions and we coached on it?" Or, "Something is occurring to me while you tell your story. May I share it with you?"

What

- **Acknowledgment of respect for the client's input**

Asking permission starts with the coach's recognition that the client is talking about a sensitive subject, or that you want to try a particular exercise. It emphasizes your partnership with the client.

- **"Yes/no" question**

Asking for permission is usually a "yes/no" question. Unlike the simple, curious questions that coaches ask most of the time (open-ended *What*, *Why*, or *How* questions), asking permission, and the Echo of a session agenda, are the two exceptions to this guideline.

- **The client's response**

The client will respond, often saying, "yes," but listen very carefully for any hint of hesitant emotion, or anything else that seems to come up.

- **Next steps**

If the client wants to continue with the topic, or chooses to use the exercise, great; go for it. If the client hesitates or is unsure, you can ask the client in what direction they would like to go, or what topic they would like to explore.

Why

A. Gives control to the client.

Asking permission is a way for you to partner with your client to co-create the agenda, outcome, and journey of each coaching session. Coaching differs from other practices in that the coach-client relationship is not hierarchical. It's not like a doctor, or a consultant, or even a counselor, where the expert has more information or knows more than the client knows. Asking permission is a way for the coach to emphasize this key difference to your client and demonstrate that you want to work as much as possible to be an equal partner with them.

B. Serves to clearly mark different points in a coaching session.

The typical coaching session consists of reviewing accountabilities, establishing an agenda, exploring that agenda, and creating new actions and accountabilities. Asking permission creates smooth transitions from one step to another during coaching sessions.

How

1. Ask permission to explore a sensitive topic, use a specific exercise, or go in an entirely different direction.

Recognize the opportunity to ask permission because the topic is sensitive, or because you see a need to emphasize your partnership with your client.

2. Pay close attention to your client's response.

Notice the way the energy of your coaching session shifts. Ask yourself how you can use the moment to strengthen your coach-client relationship. Use the tool as a means of showing respect and designing a deeper alliance with your client.

- 3. Read the client's response and continue the coaching, either along the lines of what you asked permission to explore, or ask your client in which direction they want to go.**

Of course, a coach may have suggestions or insights, but as soon as the coach shares that information, they should once again become curious about the client's experience and perspective. While a coach may dip slightly into the role of expert at times, asking permission is an effective tool to truly partner with clients.

Bottom Lining

What

Bottom Lining is when the coach asks a client to cut a story or an explanation short in order to identify the main point. It is a way to maintain focus in a coaching session, as well as keep the pace of the conversation moving. It usually consists of these parts:

- **An interruption**

Bottom Lining is an interruption. Like all interruptions, it can seem rude and clumsy. However, when you recognize that your client is telling a story that is chewing up time more than breaking new ground, it is time to jump in and interrupt.

- **Empathetic listening**

Level 2 listening helps make Bottom Lining an effective tool. When you are listening from the perspective and for the sake of your client, your interruption is in service to your client. Moreover, listening deeply, even taking time to mirror your client's voice and speech pattern silently in your head, can get you into your client's rhythm of speech. That helps you jump into the conversation more naturally and ease the interruption into something useful for your client.

- **Explanation**

If needed, you can explain to your client that you want to interrupt not because you are not enthralled with their story, but rather because you want to make the best use of your coaching time together. You can let your client know in the beginning of your professional relationship, perhaps when you Design the Alliance, that there may be times when you interrupt them in order to get back to the agenda.

- **Refocus on session agenda**

Unlike interruptions in everyday conversation, an interruption by a coach has the purpose of helping move your client forward by refocusing on the client's larger agenda.

Why

A. Provides focus.

Stories and explanations can lead to tangents that take away the focus and the time of a coaching session. Asking for the bottom line preserves focus.

B. Saves time.

Time in a coaching session is precious. As fun as a good story is, serving the client by asking questions that they have not considered, or pointing them in a particular direction, will help get to another level. It is simply a better use of time.

How

1. While listening in Level 2 or 3, recognize that your client could benefit from cutting their story short and getting to the main point.

2. Interrupt your client.

If you feel the need to explain, tell the client that you are interrupting to keep the focus and maintain the pace of the session.

3. Ask them to identify their main point.

4. Follow up with a powerful question.

3: Coach the Client, Not the Problem

Chapter Overview

An experienced life coach avoids trying to find solutions, and instead uses current challenges and setbacks as opportunities to create meaningful insights.

Defining and exploring the different agendas - from the influence of the problem's perspective to the power of a deeper agenda - are covered first in this section. This section next looks at the coaching skill Intuition and the effective role it plays in a coach's development of skills used in coaching sessions.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Professional, Curious, Courageous

Skill-Check Questions

What are the defining characteristics of the different kinds of agendas?

What exactly is Intuition in a coaching context, and what makes it an effective coaching skill?

Etymology

The word agenda comes from the Latin agere which means to do. An agenda is literally those things which ought to be accomplished. Grammatically speaking, it's a gerundive (a future passive participle). It looks at what needs to be accomplished at some point in the future, but doesn't necessarily describe who needs to do the action (a useful tool for ancient orators).

Seek the Deeper Agenda

Understanding and working between the different kinds of agendas is a useful method to ensure your coaching transforms the person, not just solves the problem. From a coaching perspective, a well-crafted agenda consists of a clarified topic, explored importance, tangible measurement, and a final echo from the coach to ensure they are on the same page as the client. This section looks at the different kinds of agendas, from the larger strategic agenda described in the previous chapter to the deeper agenda that has an impact on your client's agency and other important areas of your client's life.

One of the most common early challenges coaches-in-training must overcome is the tendency to try to solve your client's problems. Directly helping a client makes it easy to show the benefit and value of the coaching session, and is one of the quickest ways to help is to offer expert advice or a knowledgeable suggestion. But it's a trap. In such scenarios, the client and coach get caught up in trying to find the perfect action plan while unknowingly getting stuck in the problem's agenda. Within the context of a coaching relationship, offering solutions and trying to identify personally with what your client has just shared often feels annoying and disempowers your client.

Effective coaching avoids directly trying to solve the problem by offering advice or possible solutions, or by sharing a story of a similar problem that you have experienced as well. If a coach focuses only on the goal and action steps, limiting beliefs may operate in the background, making the client feel even worse for not being able to follow through on an action step.

One of your most important roles as a coach is to address internal resistance and to use the ideas and emotions the problem brings up to gain insights that lead to lasting, effective change. At times, the biggest change may not be taking a massive action step. Sometimes a subtle shift in perspective can make all the difference.

What

- **The Strategic Agenda**

The strategic agenda is the overarching goal a client wants to achieve through coaching. (It's covered in the previous chapter as part of Design the Alliance.) A skilled coach uses problems, dreams, and goals as the starting point to partner with a client to create effective, long-term objectives. It also offers a foundation for clients and coaches to

identify milestones along the journey and to craft agendas for individual coaching sessions using the T.I.M.E. model.

- **The Session Agenda**

The session agenda is what your client wants to address in a coaching session. It can start out on a surface level—such as completing a project well—or dive deep with trying to find an empowered perspective on a tough topic. This is the agenda that coaches use at the beginning of the session. The more specific and/or measurable the session agenda is, the more focused and effective the session will be.

- **The Problem's Agenda**

Getting caught up in the problem's agenda feels like trying to search for easy, quick solutions, or giving advice. It puts most attention on the client's blocks or setbacks. It leads to coaching a client's list of excuses, getting mired in reasons why actions aren't working, and it puts both coach and client on the search for easy, quick action steps to fix the situation.

- **The Deeper Problem's Agenda**

Lurking in the background is usually a deeper issue at play that would provide immense value to a client to be able to address and resolve. Whatever its origin, such internal resistance shows up on the journey to accomplish meaningful goals. The deeper problem's agenda shows up most clearly in a negative internal dialogue, and in the excuses made for not following through on important, but not necessarily urgent, action steps. Limiting beliefs, negative assumptions, or an Inner Critic might keep your client from addressing and taking action on the most meaningful projects in their life. Coaching is excellent at helping clients gain clarity on the influence of limiting beliefs, and find an empowered perspective to outgrow their Inner Critic.

- **The Deeper Growth Agenda**

During the mid-point of a coaching session, or perhaps even earlier when exploring the importance of accomplishing the session agenda, an idea of a deeper agenda for a client's agency and growth often emerges. A deeper agenda usually addresses an aspect of a client's agency or perspectives on possible pathways that goes beyond the subject at hand but has an influence on all areas in a client's life. You know your coaching is

reaching expert levels when you can help your clients craft clear and measurable agendas concerning deep personal and professional growth. —

Why

A. Awareness of the different agendas gives a roadmap and structure to your coaching sessions.

A strong agenda provides a foundation and a direction for all the other coaching elements. A strong strategic agenda establishes a clear metric to determine what would make the coaching successful. Those goals help guide and provide a strong structure to return to during the coaching journey when a client takes the necessary tangents to explore emotion and other areas of a client's life that a client doesn't often explore.

B. Following the T.I.M.E. (Topic, Importance, Measurement, Echo) model keeps the process simple, and ensures that you explore openings to deeper agendas.

Especially while asking about the importance of an agenda, a more meaningful insight or pathway toward an insight appears. The more practice you have with the T.I.M.E. model, the more natural you can make the whole process feel for your client. It is also possible to switch the order. For instance, ask about the Measurement before asking about the Importance and meaning of the Topic.

C. Clarifying agendas empowers the client to direct the process of coaching.

Clarifying the agenda also takes the pressure of the coaching direction off the coach so that the coach can focus more on listening, trusting that the client will know what would be most useful to look at, as well as what direction to go. Even during a session, asking clients, “what has the biggest insight been for you so far?” and “what do you want to do with that insight?” can reset the session agenda in a way that empowers the client and ensures the session is useful to the client.

D. Seeking a deeper agenda helps you address a client's agency.

When you are listening with a curiosity for what it must be like to be the client, and seeing the world with the same beliefs about what your client is capable of achieving,

then you are automatically seeking to understand your client's agency. You will naturally turn your attention toward coaching the client, and use the challenges of the problem to highlight emotions and explore ideas that lead to meaningful and useful insight.

How

1. Lean into the 3 Trusts: Trust Your Client, Trust Yourself, and Trust the Process.

Leaning into the 3 Trusts allows you to coach from an empowering point of view. The difference between a knowledge approach and an empowerment approach has a profound impact on the level of proaction a client takes. Assume your client is on the brink of a major insight. The more you lean into trust, the more a client feels seen, connected, and safe.

2. While listening, ask yourself fundamental Learn-Be-Do questions.

Questions such as “Who is the client being?”, “What perspective is the client taking?”, and “What is most important to the client?” are the core issues that life coaching addresses. Once these core issues are addressed, all the other little details (like finding a solution) and needed action steps become inescapably obvious.

3. Use the T.I.M.E. Model (Topic, Importance, Meaning, and Echo) to craft strategic agendas and session agendas while also listening for the opportunity to articulate and explore a growth agenda with your client.

An excellent place to explore a possible deeper agenda is in the Importance section of the T.I.M.E. model of agenda setting. When you explore the larger meaning and context of a specific agenda, larger learning, perspective, or some insight that can be applied to many other areas of your client's life emerges. An experienced coach learns to trust—and gives ample space and time to—the process.

Example questions to ask to get to deeper growth agendas:

- Who do you need to be in order to achieve your agenda?
- What's the larger element at play in your life that this session agenda represents?

- What is your life asking you to learn in order to be successful?
- Where else in your life do you see a similar pattern?
- What do you need to change in yourself to achieve your agenda?
- What strengths and qualities do you need to harness in order to get what you want?
- What is the impact on your life if you achieve your agenda?
- What is the impact on your life if you do not achieve your agenda?

Intuition

What

Intuition is a curious thing. When you listen empathetically for lengthy periods of time, you will pick up on certain insights and surprising emotions that will not seem logical. Not only is it important to pay attention to what's being said, oftentimes it is paying attention to what's not being said that can spark your intuition. The skill of intuition is trusting these hunches and effectively sharing them with your client. An important aspect of intuition is sharing in a way that truly serves your client and does not merely demonstrate how clever or insightful you are as a coach. Intuition plays an important role in a coaching conversation because it expands both coach and client beyond rational, logical thinking. Intuition often opens new paths for the coach and client to travel. Here are elements of intuition as a life coaching tool:

- **Insight**

The skill of intuition is based on the coach having an insight that might not make logical sense. It could be an idea that just pops into the coach's head, or an emotion the coach is feeling that doesn't quite make sense. Sometimes intuition feels like a whisper. Other times an intuitive hit is so loud the coach would have to work hard to ignore it. You can trust yourself, especially if you are listening Level 2 empathetically and feel the extra nudge of curiosity.

- **Sharing**

Your intuition only serves the client if you share it. At times, it is useful to preface your intuitive thought. Other times, just jump right in. You can trust the coaching relationship and the process.

- **Release**

The most important part of the skill is to release attachment to whether or not your intuition is correct. Even if your hunch is not correct and your client bluntly tells you that in no way does the idea even remotely apply to them, you have still moved the coaching conversation forward. If your intuition is off the mark, you might have created more value because you have modeled boldness and risk taking.

- **Curiosity**

Whether your intuition is right on the money or way off base, shifting back to empathetic listening is crucial. Marveling in the magic of your intuition will not serve your client. Wallowing in how wrong your intuitive hit was does not serve your client either. Thinking about how right or wrong your intuition was is slipping into Level 1 listening because you are making it about yourself. Get back on that Level 2 listening coaching horse and put all your attention on your client, asking them a curious question.

Why

A. Coaching is free from sticking to strict logic.

Exercising intuition frees both the coach and the client from the necessity to be logical or for every question to make rational sense. Life does not always make sense, so why should every coaching question be based on rationality or logic?

B. Intuition can quickly change direction and add depth to a coaching session.

Intuition can be a powerful catalyst for a new line of thought to explore. Creating new paths to follow and insights to pursue provides value to your client.

C. Sharing intuition demonstrates courage.

Sharing an idea can sometimes feel like a risk. Sometimes your intuition does not fit. In such cases, you have an opportunity to demonstrate elegant failure. If you fail, yet recover without blinking an eye, you implicitly give your client permission to take greater risks in the coaching process.

How

1. **Begin by actively listening to your client, and allow your mind to recognize thoughts that might not make logical sense.**

- 2. Ask yourself if this insight may serve your client or add value to the coaching session.**
- 3. Share the idea with your client, and release all expectation of being correct.**
- 4. Ask your client to make it their own insight or dismiss it. You can ask questions like:**
 - I have this idea that [fill in the blank] may be helpful in some way. What do you think about [fill in the blank]?
 - If you were to apply [fill in the blank] to yourself, how would you change it to fit perfectly?
 - What about this makes sense to you?
 - What do you like about it?
 - What do you not like about it?

5. Remember to listen empathetically and stay curious.

Listen for the next more interesting aspect of what your client is saying, and put all your attention on your client (not on how awesome or not your intuition was). Even if your intuition was slightly off, clients understand the depth and general direction you were going, and will most likely pick up the thread of the idea and make it their own.

Clearing

What

Sometimes a client shows up to a session upset about something that just happened. It could be something small, but being upset makes it challenging to focus on what is really important to your client. Some common examples: getting a speeding ticket, finding out about an unexpected bill, or having an argument with a spouse. Clearing is the skill of allowing your client the opportunity to vent the emotion with the intention of getting it out of the way to focus on something else. Clearing consists of these five components:

- **Recognition that something is in the way**

It is often obvious when the client has something in the way. A coach practicing Level 2 listening can easily tell if the client seems distracted or annoyed by something.

- **Intention to clear**

It is important that the client has a chance to vent feelings of frustration or emotions with the intention to get it out of the way and focus on something else. If the client does not have the intention to move on to what is important, clearing turns into complaining, and there is a danger of the client seeing themselves as powerless in the situation.

- **Permission to let it all out**

The coach and the client quickly design the *Clearing* exercise, with the coach underlining that the client has permission to let out whatever emotion or frustration, to get it in the open, then out of the way.

- **Time limit**

Setting a time limit on clearing helps provide a structure and understanding that there is a definite beginning point and end point. In other words, the client has to get down to the “Bottom Line” and get it out of the way.

- **Coach as witness**

The coach's role is to listen empathetically and with the understanding that the client just needs to get it out in order to focus on something else. Something may come up where the coach can follow up with powerful questions, but the coach's main role is simply to listen, and then trust the client will be prepared to move on to more important work.

Why

Sometimes a client just has to let it all out, and having a trained coach witness their emotions and frustrations is a tremendous help. Clearing is effective for the following reasons:

A. Strengthens the alliance between the client and coach.

Quickly designing the *Clearing* exercise between a coach and client is an opportunity to remind both of the Designed Alliance and successfully complete the exercise with focused intention. Quickly designing parameters of clearing offers both the coach and the client the opportunity to revisit the Designed Alliance.

B. Gets stuff out of the way.

Clearing is effective for helping a client recognize what is in the way and move it aside. It is a great skill to have in your back pocket, especially because the understanding is that whatever is in the way does not necessarily need to be worked out or have an intense focus.

C. Sets a time limit.

The time limit emphasizes the idea that this is something that will eventually end. It empowers the client with the ability to be aware that after venting within the time limit, the focus will shift to something else. It gives the client tremendous self-awareness, allows control over emotions, and provides the ability to decide where the client ultimately wants to focus.

How

1. Recognize that there is something your client needs to clear.

It is usually obvious, but sometimes there seems to be something nagging in the back of your client's mind. Trust your intuition, and ask about it as a first step.

2. Briefly explain the exercise of *Clearing*, and invite your client to fully express whatever emotion comes up.

You can encourage your client to even over-express emotion with the intention of fully releasing it after the feelings are expressed.

3. Begin designing the exercise by setting a time limit.

Make sure your client knows that your role is simply to witness and listen empathetically. The time limit is usually no more than two minutes.

4. Encourage your client to dig into the exercise.

Listen to your client vent emotions and frustration, but keep an eye on the clock. Avoid interrupting, chiming in with feedback, or asking questions during the allotted clearing time. This time is just for your client to get it all off their mind and for the coach to simply listen.

5. After the time is up, ask your client powerful questions, or give them permission to focus on something completely different.

At this point, it becomes obvious if your client has really cleared what they need to with the follow-up questions. If your client wants to keep going, you can keep going on another clearing section, or you can ask your questions about clearing, such as "What do you hope to achieve through more clearing?"

4: Client's Being

Chapter Overview

This chapter addresses coaching concepts, exercises, and tools for asking questions about your client's character strengths, personality traits, habitual assumptions, and agency. Typically, questions about a client's Being are the toughest to find because they are unusual. However, so much of coaching relies on clients being able to enter a space of self-reflection. It requires that they gain insights that not only address their current problems, but dive deeper into the personality habits that are having an impact on all areas of their life.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Curious, Courageous, Confident

Skill-Check Questions

*What are strategies for asking questions about a client's Being?
How can I use Core Motivation as a tool during coaching sessions?*

Exploring Character and Mindset

From a life coaching perspective, a client's Being refers to a client's identities, personality, characteristics, mood, energy levels, values, and thought patterns. So much of the value of life coaching comes from raising your client's awareness about these aspects and asking apt questions designed to explore your client's assumptions. In terms of Hope Theory, Being is directly addressed in someone's agency, current skill set, and beliefs about what's possible. In addition, someone's sense of self also becomes apparent by the kinds of goals they choose to pursue. Asking the reason behind goals and their achievement is an excellent place to explore with a client. Continuing that thread of curiosity with how these goals influence the way clients see themselves is powerful and helps clients move to deeper levels of understanding of self that have an impact on all areas of a client's life.

This chapter explores how the self-theory of growth versus fixed mindset shows up in an exploration of a client's Being. It continues with an overview of Acknowledgment as a coaching tool, and concludes with how to use a personality assessment in a coaching context as a starting point to inform powerful coaching questions.

What

- **Your client as a character in their own story**

Narrative therapy offers a powerful perspective in raising awareness of one's Being, as well as providing areas to explore and questions to consider. It invites you to imagine that you are the main actor in a movie that mimics your life. Then it asks the question: if you were the main character in your life, and your life were a play you were creating, what aspects of your life would you change? From this perspective, the opportunities of meaningful exploration are endless. For example, let's consider a few more questions:

- What characteristics are you delighted that the main character has?
- What characteristics are you waiting for them to discover?
- What characteristic would you want them to have less of?
- What would you want the main character to achieve? Who would they need to be to achieve it?

- **Implicit Self-Theories: Growth and Fixed Mindsets**

Self-Theories: Life coaching excels at helping people raise awareness of their character traits, as well as the world views and assumptions about self and others that have a tremendous impact on all areas of someone's life. Something as simple as addressing a limiting belief about a certain skill set might make a profound difference in the way someone sees themselves and the actions they choose to take. A prime example of an assumption that is not often made mindfully is the difference between a growth mindset and a fixed mindset.³¹ Carol Dweck pioneered work that looked at how beliefs about one's intelligence and agency has a huge impact on the quality of motivation and goals someone pursues. She coined the terms "growth mindset" and "fixed mindset" to draw a distinction between two different world views.³²

Fixed Mindset: This worldview assumes that intelligence and skill are fixed or predetermined. In other words, someone either “has it” or they don't. This mindset leads to performance-oriented goals that showcase their inherent abilities and generate judgements of praise from others. Success is defined by demonstrating talent, which is shown in the results. Challenges are viewed negatively, and are a threat to one's core identity. Since success is deeply tied to one's core identity, failure is experienced as a reflection of not being enough.

Growth Mindset: Those who embody this worldview assume that intelligence and skill are malleable and limitless. In other words, with enough hard work and dedication, you can achieve anything. People with a growth mindset develop learning-oriented goals and actively seek out challenges, which they use to incrementally grow better or stronger at something. Since success is a mere product of the process of hard work, the hard work itself is their litmus test for well-being. They experience failure as an opportunity for learning and tend to problem-solve when met with setbacks to map pathways for generating the knowledge or skill required for a given task.

The HOW section explores these concepts from the perspective of how a life coach could use an awareness of the growth vs. fixed mindset theory as a way to craft curious questions that lead clients to meaningful insights.

³¹ Dweck, C.S. and E.L. Leggett. 1988. A Social-Cognitive Approach to Motivation and Personality. *Psychological Review* 95(2): pp. 256-273.

³² Dweck, C.S. 1999. *Self Theories: Their role in motivation, personality, and development*. Psychology Press. New York, NY.

<i>Fixed Mindset</i>	<i>Growth Mindset</i>
Believes intelligence & talent is static	Believes intelligence and talent can be developed
Desires to look smart	Desires to learn
Avoids challenges	Embraces challenges as an opportunity to grow
Gives up easily	Persists in the face of setbacks
Sees effort as fruitless or as something you do when you are not good enough	Sees effort as the path to mastery
Ignores useful negative feedback & criticism	Leans from feedback & criticism
Feels threatened by the success of others	Finds lessons and inspiration in the success of others
May plateau early and achieve less than their full potential	Reaches ever-higher levels of achievement

• Coaching Strategy, Tools, and Exercises

In any coaching exercise, you can always ask questions about a client's perception of their strengths, weaknesses, traits, raw talent, effort, and identity. There are a few exercises that are especially useful in helping address those aspects of your client's agency, as well as the meaning behind and importance of their goals. For example, helping clients craft metaphors is a great way to capture the essence of who your client wants to be and the energy they want to emphasize. *Acknowledgment* is another good example of a tool that can help your client become more self-aware and understand their impact more fully.

Why

A. Raising awareness is a powerful tool.

Attending to the client's Being is so effective because it helps the client gain clarity about personal characteristics in order to emphasize action that needs to be taken. Knowing if you are successful due to or in spite of a character trait is not always straightforward. When a coach focuses awareness on who the client is being, the coach helps the client

understand that Being goes deeper than the actions they are taking. When a client slows down the normal pace of life during a coaching session, they are able to directly address who they want to be.

B. Self-theories run deep.

How we orient toward goals is everything. It is the springboard from which we can ask clients critical questions about whether they are focused on outcomes or processes.

Growth mindset has become one of the practical cornerstones of applied positive psychology. The authors explain how feelings of helplessness and mastery can dictate the way we live our lives. It has everything to do with the types of goals we formulate, and links directly to Hope Theory. Paying attention to Being is rare, yet it is often the piece of the puzzle that allows everything else to fall into place.

C. Increased clarity leads to deeper fulfillment.

Too often, a client looks for fulfillment outside themselves, or wishes the situation was different. Of course, being motivated to make things different is one of the primary drivers for a client to achieve goals and take action. Yet having a strong sense of awareness is powerful in helping the client appreciate the present moment and the process of achieving a goal. This makes it easier to slip into intrinsic motivation. Addressing the Being links a sense of purpose to the client's actions.

How

The following is a list of three suggested coaching strategies and exercises that can help you craft questions about a client's Being. This chapter continues with a look at *Acknowledgment* as a coaching tool, as well as *Core Motivation*, a tool to be used as a starting point to spark insights that lead to a client's deeper understanding of themselves.

1. Address Being through powerful questions.

When you are stuck on how to incorporate and build self-awareness for your client, asking direct, powerful questions about who your client was, is, or wants to be helps create self-awareness. Such questions also serve to deepen awareness of what your client is learning about themselves, as well as the action they need to take. Most goals concentrate on what a client wants to accomplish or have (the Doing). Those are useful

goals, but turning attention to who the client wants to become (the Being) adds a deeper level of meaning to their life. The following kinds of questions point to client's Being:

- What characteristics do you have that you most admire?
- In accomplishing your goal, who do you want to be?
- Who do you need to be to accomplish this goal?
- What does being a good [fill in the blank] mean to you?
- When you are at your best, what characteristics do you naturally display?
- What do you think people most admire about you?
- What about yourself do you fear?
- In your mind, what kind of person is capable of accomplishing this goal?

2. Take on the perspective that your client is both the author and character of their story.

When you think about your client as a character in a story, what would you be curious to learn about the character's development? It's helpful to keep in mind that this approach has its roots in narrative therapy, and you can get curious about all aspects of a story from script to soundtrack. When you look at a person's character and articulate things like their hopes, dreams, flaws, and strengths, you are naturally addressing a client's Being.

3. Ask your client to consider how growth and fixed mindsets apply to them or to the project/goal at hand.

Asking about the different aspects of growth and fixed mindset is another structure that you can use to craft questions tailored specifically to your client. The insights and understanding you bring as a coach are extremely powerful when combined with empathetic listening and other coaching skills. One example is sharing the fixed and growth mindset chart that describes the differences between growth and fixed mindsets and ask clients how their mindset applies to certain assumptions and goals.

Acknowledgment

What

Acknowledgment is when a coach addresses the characteristics or qualities the client drew upon to make something happen, move forward, or grow. It is speaking directly to who the client is and a client's agency. Acknowledgment can be used as a means of articulating what you see as a coach so that your client can become more self-aware and understand their impact more fully. It is pointing out the Being of the client, a characteristic that makes a difference.

Acknowledgment differs from a compliment in that a compliment often simply addresses an action the client has taken, or the Doing. A compliment, although welcome, usually just skims the surface, while an acknowledgment is a pause in the recognition of something deeper and more permanent. The following are the essential elements of an acknowledgment:

- **Highlights characteristics**

Acknowledgment looks at the specific characteristics of who the client is and the strengths of those characteristics.

- **Heartfelt**

Acknowledgment has a beautiful impact on your client. It communicates connection and caring.

- **Short**

Acknowledgments don't need to be long to be effective. Sometimes the shortest acknowledgments are the most powerful.

Why

A. Points to a deeper truth.

Acknowledgment works so well because it points to something deeper than just the action that the client took. With acknowledgment, the coach addresses who the client needed to be in order to take that action. Addressing the deeper truth adds power to the coach-client relationship and encourages the client to look more deeply and fully at themselves and what they are capable of accomplishing.

B. It points to Being.

Part of what makes acknowledgment so powerful is that it speaks to the core of a client's characteristics. A coach can point out a positive aspect of a client's personality and draw it out with clarity. It needs to be used carefully, which is one of the reasons acknowledgment is so effective.

C. Coach has mirror effect.

Clients are sometimes so stuck in the details and the facts of what is in front of them that it is a challenge to see the larger picture, or the deeper truth of who they are. Part of the value that the coach brings to a coaching session is the ability to be a mirror and to say directly and genuinely what the coach sees.

How

Acknowledgment relies on the coach's ability to remain grounded and listen for the qualities behind their client's success. The client may be describing a story or a particular success or accomplishment, and the coach speaks to the inner qualities required to achieve that success.

- 1. While your client is relating their specific story or success, listen for the deeper qualities and identify who your client had to be in order to be successful or achieve that accomplishment.**
- 2. Tell your client the specific characteristics you see in them, especially those that were required for the achievement.**
- 3. Notice the impact that you have on your client.**

Follow the acknowledgment with a powerful question.

Core Motivation

From a coaching perspective, personality assessments are tools to use as a starting point to generate meaningful insights. It's helpful to place the tool in the context of growth mindset to avoid a common pitfall of feeling placed in a box or labeled that can sometimes happen when working with personality assessments. The main purpose of Core Motivation is to raise your client's self-awareness and to create insights and opportunities to coach. The tool helps clients increase self-awareness and focuses on challenging situations to describe characteristics of personality.³³

It is an excellent tool to use in introductory interviews or when working with groups on leadership and communication.³⁴ Landing on the “right” style isn't as important as exploring and having fun with the tool. The tool offers coaches an effective map for addressing a client's Being and core perspectives on life.

Extremely important to success of this tool is the mindset that personality is a collection of thought and emotion habits. Like any habit, a pattern of personality can be deeply ingrained and challenging to change. Yet, like all habits, creating change is possible, sometimes even easy with increased self-awareness and knowledge of how habits work.

Another important point is the flexibility of the core motivation typing tool, which allows clients to be more than one type, and acknowledges that we all have aspects of each type within us. By avoiding a dualistic approach to personality - having one characteristic means having less of another - clients can capture more accurately the complexities of their unique personality. Someone can be strongly a One and strongly a Seven at the same time.

Approaching the Core Motivation tools with these three points in mind - emphasis on Being, personality as a bundle of habits, and complex flexibility - the coach's job is to raise awareness, explore with the client, then empower the client by following their lead on which direction to go with this tool.

³³ Bland, Andrew. (2010). The Enneagram: A Review of the Empirical and Transformational Literature. *Journal of Humanistic Counseling, Education and Development*. 49. 16-31.

³⁴ Matise, Miles. (2007) The enneagram: An innovative approach, *Journal of Professional Counseling: Practice, Theory & Research*, 35:1, 38-58.

What

- **Nine core types**

Core Motivation is based on a motivation system that includes nine iconic personality types based on the Enneagram. Each of these personality types has certain characteristics. Of course, a nine-type personality system cannot capture the complexity of human experience, but the tool works as a way to increase awareness of different aspects of a personality. There is no such thing as a good or bad, right or wrong type. The point is to provide opportunities to explore ideas and insights generated by the tool.

- **Description of strengths**

Each type has certain strengths commonly associated with it. From a strengths-based coaching perspective, it is extremely useful to build on and cultivate these strengths.

- **Description of weaknesses**

The Core Motivation tool is both descriptive and prescriptive. It describes each personality's usual blind spots and weaknesses. Sometimes, such raised awareness is enough for clients to make effective change. However, the tool goes one step further. It also prescribes actions and gives suggestions on things that can lead to personal growth. Understanding their weaknesses and using the suggestions offered by the tool can help recalibrate the personality's message. It can help them exercise more informed choices about which perspectives to adopt and actions to take.

Why

A. Increased awareness empowers the client.

A personality system presents the challenge of putting the coach in the role of expert. Empowering the client, truly partnering with the client through extreme curiosity, and asking permission to explore keeps the coach and the client on equal footing. The point of Core Motivation is to empower the client with self-awareness and knowledge. As a coach, use the tool as a starting point to increase empowerment for the benefit of client action.

B. The tool speeds up the exploration of character traits.

It usually takes a client less than five minutes to find which one or two types best describe themselves. Such speed makes the Core Motivation tool powerful, and when combined with curious coaching questions, sometimes those insights gained in five minutes will last a lifetime.

C. Addressing aspects of personality focuses on Being.

Another challenge of life coaching is addressing a client's Being. Using Core Motivation helps specifically pinpoint characteristics a client might embody. Core Motivation provides a framework to help a client focus on various aspects of their personality. Sometimes a perspective or personality aspect matches very closely to a client's perception of themselves that is taken for granted and is challenging to describe. Core Motivation helps a client gain a different perspective of themselves. It makes changing personality characteristics less personal and thus, easier to accomplish.

How

- 1. Emphasize that Core Motivation is a starting point to gain insights, and that clients can pick and choose different aspects of different types to make the descriptions fit them completely.**

The purpose is not to try to fit the client into the descriptions of each type, but rather to find those parts of the descriptions that fit the client.

- 2. Ask your client to read the descriptions, marking which paragraph or two fits best.**

If no paragraphs seem to fit, that's ok. You can ask your client to take bits and pieces from several different types to craft their own description. If a paragraph seems to fit except for one or two sentences, that's okay too. The main purpose is to direct clients to consider different aspects of their personality and character traits.

- 3. Use elements in the paragraphs or Core Motivation charts as a starting point for curious questions. For example, if your client identifies with portions of type two, a Helper, you could ask:**

- How do you balance extending yourself to help others with having time and energy for yourself?
- What are your thoughts about the importance of being recognized and thanked when you go above and beyond to help someone?
- What makes it easy for you to identify the help others need most? How would you apply that same skill to yourself?

4. Ask your client how they want to use this tool for self-growth.

The key in working from a life coaching perspective with any personality assessment - from Core Motivation to discovering strengths - is to empower your client with the direction they want to take the tool. If it is working for your client, great; keep using it. If it feels forced or difficult, you can move to a different tool. By asking your client what they are curious about in their own lives after reading through the descriptions, or how they want to make the tool their own, you invite your client to partner with you to determine the direction of the coaching.

5. Take the insights gained from the tool to design action that ties back into your client's original agenda for the coaching session.

Tying the tool back to the session agenda or the strategic agenda provides a solid foundation for using a tool like Core Motivation from a life coaching perspective.

In addition, you can also use the Core Motivation tool throughout your coaching program. It is presented as early as possible in the coaching process so you can blend its insights into any of the other exercises and tools that follow. At any point in time, you can come back and reference the tool, asking your client what additional insights they have gained after having (hopefully) taken those action steps to cultivate personality strengths and address weaknesses.

The Core Motivation Paragraphs

Type One: The Perfectionist

I strive for things to be perfect and in place. If I am passionate about something, I work really hard and spend a lot of time on it. I want other things around me to be perfect, but I am mostly hard on myself. I am very critical of the things I do, and I am very disappointed in myself when I make a mistake. I often have a lot of priorities on my plate, but I just want to improve my life and the lives of others. Often, people follow my lead, and I am comfortable in that leadership capacity. Whatever I have to do, it has to be done right, and I will do what it takes to get there. Others might say I am intense or too serious at times, but I just like to be focused and I would rather relax when the work is done.

Type Two: The Helper

What really drives me is my ability to help others. I love doing things for somebody, especially if I know they will appreciate it. I feel like I know how best to help people because it is usually easy for me to determine their wants and needs. It might seem like I try too hard or am controlling at times, but it is just because I want to help in the best way. I get satisfaction out of putting others before myself, though sometimes it takes its toll when I do not focus on my own needs. I like when others recognize that I am there for them, and I usually have a difficult time saying no. I also place a huge emphasis on relationships. I give a lot of myself in hopes that others will recognize what I have given, and in turn will respect me for that. At the end of the day, I hope that the people I help will be there for me when necessary.

Type Three: The Doer

I want to be the best I can be at what I do. Goals are important to me, and I work hard at achieving them. I feel very successful when I meet my goals, and I want others to respect me for it. My mind works rather quickly, and sometimes I can get irritable if something or someone seems to be working too slowly. Though I am personally competitive, I can also do well on a team and am well liked. I want to make a good impression on people, and I care about how others view me. When I have a really passionate goal, I know just what to do to achieve it and stay motivated. I prefer to do only the things I am good at.

Type Four: The Artist

I like to express my emotions, and I want others to understand me for who I am. I consider myself genuine and unique. I am constantly seeking more in terms of my life, and I try to evaluate and consider what is missing. I do not like to be misunderstood. Sometimes people might mistake me for being dramatic or caring too much, but really I just want to express exactly how I feel. I like to get to know others on a deeper level and form real connections. I am passionate about feelings, and I want to accurately reveal myself to others.

Type Five: The Thinker

I love being the expert. Before I delve into something, I want to know as much as I can. I do not like to be wrong or corrected, which is why if I do not know something, I would rather not say it. I am happy to argue my points for what I believe is right, but if the facts do not support my idea, I will reconsider my idea. I often thrive on alone time, and I like to think about my past experiences. I am pretty independent, and I do not want to have to rely or depend on someone else. I crave information and knowledge, and I am not shy in a group setting, where I can speak up and say what I know and express what I want. Overall, I am a simple person, and my life is rather straightforward.

Type Six: The Friend

I like to be prepared for the worst. Often I envision worst-case scenarios so that I know just what to do in case they actually happen. I have a creative imagination and a somewhat odd sense of humor. I can be unsure of people in authority, especially if I do not trust them. Once I trust someone and have explored an idea, I will be very loyal. When it comes to new ideas, the first thing that usually comes to mind is what could go wrong. I would rather think it through before accepting it at face value. I am not much of a follower, especially when it comes to ideas, because I can easily pick out why I disagree with it.

Type Seven: The Optimist

I enjoy life at a fast pace. I like to create many options for myself and future plans. I keep many options open. I shy away from negative emotion, and I hate feeling bored or trapped with my life. If I am upset over something, I do not want to dwell on it. Sometimes I will get really excited over

something rather quickly, but then eventually I will get bored with it and forget about it or drop it. Often, I will start things that do not quite get finished. At the same time, I am very optimistic, and I believe life is a ride that is meant to be enjoyed. When I have several options that I can choose from, I have a hard time deciding because I want them all.

Type Eight: The Defender

I like to be in control as much as possible. I am very blunt and honest because I want things to be clear. It frustrates me when I feel like someone is conniving or unfair. At times, I might seem controlling, but I just want to take charge and keep things going smoothly. I try to hide my weaknesses because I feel vulnerable when someone else knows what they are. That being said, I think we should still recognize our weaknesses and do something about them. I would rather get something done on my own than be told what to do, which is why I sometimes have a hard time following orders from authority. I will not always respect a person of authority upfront, but when I do, I am much more willing to follow directions from them.

Type Nine: The Peacemaker

I like things to be peaceful and happy. I tend to avoid conflict and confrontation. Sometimes I cannot even recognize exactly what I want, so I just go with the flow, especially in group settings. When I do know what I want, I might still agree with someone even if it goes against that. I might get angry at myself, but I do not like getting angry at other people, or when people are angry at each other. I have a kind heart, and I know it can be taken advantage of. When I really need to, I know how to stand up for myself. I am good at seeing multiple sides to a situation, both pros and cons.

Basic Desires, Fears, and Internal Message

#	<i>Main Desire</i>	<i>Basic Fear, What I Avoid</i>	<i>I'm OK when</i>
1	To be perfect	Being bad or flawed, mistakes, losing control	I do what is right
2	To be loved	Being unwanted, disappointing others	I can help others
3	To be the best	Being useless, failing, looking bad	I am recognized for achievement
4	To be unique	Being forgotten, being rejected, being fake	I express my true nature
5	To be right	Being wrong, strong feelings, demands on my time or energy	I am the expert
6	To be safe	Being threatened, being helpless, feeling useless	I avoid danger
7	To be happy	Being trapped in pain, unclarity, boredom, pain	I get what I want
8	To be in control	Being weak and vulnerable, feeling controlled	I am strong
9	To be comfortable	Being in conflict, tension, being outside comfort zones	I am peaceful

Strengths and Leadership

#	<i>Typical Strengths</i>	<i>Leadership Style</i>
1	Principled. Eager to improve. Responsible. Will work to get things done right. Loyalty.	When I allow myself to have fun. When I accept myself and the situation as perfect just as it is.
2	Compassion. Helpfulness. Charming. Knowing how to help others. Sympathetic.	When I don't depend on others thanking or recognizing me. Focus on action that is also beneficial to myself as well as others.
3	Successful and an ability to achieve a lot. Team player. Charming. Calm under pressure.	When I allow myself to focus on fulfillment. When I can set aside a desire to look good for the sake of accomplishing a meaningful goal.
4	Creativity. Artistic. Romantic imagination. In tune with emotion.	When I embrace the ordinary and work to make it exceptional. When I focus on principles, not getting sidetracked by emotions.
5	Scholarship. Thoughtfulness. Patience. Reliability. Creativity and an ability to craft useful systems. Calm under pressure.	When I take action and connect with people. Have the ability to think deeply about problems to create lasting solutions.
6	Wit. Perseverance. Loyalty. Strong analytic mind. Humor. Responsibility.	When I act on positive assumptions. Magnetic when I focus on positive goals and view problems as challenges and opportunities.
7	Vision. Excitement. Fun. Love to think up new ideas and connections. Entertaining and Charming.	When I am willing to face negative situations and emotions. Focused and willing to do the necessary hard, grinding work.
8	Decisive. Strong. Can get the job done. Fair. When in the service of others, they can become heroic.	When I am aware of my impact. When I take other people's needs and feelings into account.
9	Ability to create peace. Maintain harmony in groups. Inclusive. Understanding. Accepting. Caring.	When I have a clearly defined goal. Excited to step outside my comfort zone and take meaningful action.

Personal Growth

#	<i>Typical Challenges</i>	<i>Suggested Exercises</i>
1	Being too hard on myself. Being too serious. Not taking time for myself for fun. Demanding perfection.	Improvisation. Accepting, even embracing mistakes. Taking time out of the day for fun and laughter.
2	Doing so much for others that I forget to take care of my needs. Becoming demanding when I am not recognized.	Create boundaries. Set aside time to treat yourself as you would another person.
3	Believing my worth is in what I accomplish. Sacrificing personal relationships for the sake of a goal.	Relax your focus on success and put your focus on what would fulfill you. Clarifying your values and what's really important.
4	Over-identifying with emotion, especially sad emotion, without moving into action. Feeling unworthy. Too much self-focus.	Practice changing perspectives and choosing perspectives that empower you to get what you really want.
5	Over-analyzing and being stubborn. Avoiding people or opportunities that seem too overwhelming. Not moving into action.	Short meditation during the day to check in with your emotions. Then move into action! You must act on what you decide.
6	Not trusting yourself or others. Thinking about worst-case scenarios. Wanting to keep knowing more before making a decision.	Check in with fear. Practice mindfully embracing positive perspectives. Positive affirmations.
7	Thinking that the grass is greener somewhere else. Constantly trying to avoid pain and not meeting responsibilities.	Clarify a mission statement and take small action steps to accomplish it. Meditate. Exercise discipline.
8	Being stubborn. Denying weakness and sensitivity. Fighting any attempt to be controlled and trying to control others.	Focus on the gift that you can give to others. Listen closely to others and practice empathy. Resist being stubborn.
9	Ignoring problems. Not meeting problems when they first start and avoiding conflict at any cost. Not knowing what you really want.	Clarify a mission statement. Take action. Be assertive before you get angry.

5: Client's Learning

Chapter Overview

Asking questions that address what a client is learning about themselves - or what they hope to learn about themselves - is a natural way to look at a client's agency and mine for meaningful insights.

It's helpful to have a handful of default coaching questions to use when working with clients, such as, "What are you learning about yourself?" Or "What do you hope to learn about yourself?" This chapter goes into detail about the theory and structure of asking questions that address a client's deeper learning, assessment tools designed to raise awareness, and inquiry as a coaching tool.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Curious, Courageous, Confident

Skill-Check Questions

What are strategies for asking questions about a client's Learning?

How can I use assessment wheels as a tool during coaching sessions?

When would I use inquiry as a tool?

Meaningful Learning

The client's Learning is the insight a client has about themselves, the situation, and what's possible. The coaching process excels in leading clients to meaningful breakthroughs that translate to better decisions and more effective action steps. Such a process works best when a coach is attuned to the client's personal and professional (or academic) growth, and trusts that the client is naturally resourceful. In terms of Hope Theory, a client's Learning applies to the assumptions, ideas, and emotion tied up in agency, as well as knowledge, creativity, and capability to create and follow different pathways. Someone with a high degree of hope trusts in their current skill sets, as well as their ability to gain insights and additional knowledge to accomplish meaningful goals.

Most people in the rush of everyday life do not take time to reflect and actively seek out insights, especially with the help of a certified life coach. They are locked into a constant state of trying to perform at their best, or dealing with the stress of the effort and anxiousness about the results. All that stress and concern does have benefits: there is an optimum balance between the stress of a goal and engaging focus and effort to achieve a goal. However, most people are locked into a state of constant performance. When helping clients reflect during a coaching session, a coach allows them to relax, broaden their perspectives, and gain meaningful insights to build agency and open up more pathways.

In essence, exploring Learning mimics the growth described by Barbara Fredrickson in her Broaden and Build theory of positive emotion.³⁵ Fredrickson posits that positive emotion is not simply the absence of negative emotion, but a state that allows for optimum learning, similar to play. While feeling good, engaged, and relaxed, sharp focus decreases slightly, but creativity and energy increase. Clients enter a learning zone that creates new insights, perspectives, and skills to achieve increasingly challenging goals.³⁶ A coach creates a space for clients to learn about themselves and trust that meaningful insights will lead naturally to effectively designed action steps.

This chapter focuses on the elements and coaching strategies that help facilitate a client's Learning.

³⁵ Fredrickson, Barbara & Branigan, Christine. (2005). Positive Emotions Broaden the Scope of Attention and Thought-action Repertoires. *Cognition & emotion*. 19. 313-332.

³⁶ Fredrickson, Barbara & Losada, Marcial. (2005). The Positive Affect and the Complex Dynamics of Human Flourishing. *The American psychologist*. 60. 678-86. 10.1037/0003-066X.60.7.678.

What

- **The three aspects of meaningful Learning**

In looking at Learning from a long-range, bird's-eye view, these are the three elements of a meaningful insight. These elements are similar to Ken Robinson's definition of creativity, which is the combination of the novelty of an idea with its usefulness and connection to what already exists.³⁷

1. **Concept.** Learning happens when a client becomes aware of an idea, emotion, or piece of information. The concept itself is the first part of learning. When people think about learning, most people think solely about the concept.
2. **Context.** Learning happens when a concept is placed within a larger context. In life coaching, the client's life is the context in which all other learning takes place. Being mindful—and curious—about aspects of the context can offer useful areas to explore in a coaching session.
3. **Importance.** The last piece of Learning is the meaning and importance that a client becomes aware of when learning a new idea, emotion, or piece of information. Asking about meaning helps solidify the learning and often brings the insight even deeper.

- **Balance between learning and performance zones**

It's possible for both zones to happen at the same time, but it's rare. More common is to find a balance point between the two. During a coaching session, by bringing attention to the balance point, you offer clients a chance to mindfully design how they spend time in each zone between coaching sessions. Even the awareness of the difference between the two often leads clients to insights into how they are spending their time and energy.

- **Performance Zone.** A performance zone is the time when your client is actively trying to achieve their best results. One of the benefits of a performance zone is the increased pressure to use stress as a tool to get the work done and put in maximum effort over a short period of time. The drawback to staying in a performance zone is that one sacrifices the opportunity and learning that comes from making and correcting mistakes and being able to try out new approaches or skill sets.

³⁷ Robinson, Ken. "Rethinking Creativity". *Out of Our Minds*. Hoboken, NJ: Capstone, 2011. 22-23.

- **Learning Zone.** A learning zone is time spent in reflection (which naturally happens in a coaching session) or practicing a specific skill. In this case, the goal is to get feedback and learning to apply the next time it counts in a performance zone.
- **Attention to current—and future—agency**
- **A name for the insight**

Coaching for a client's learning looks at insights about the present as well as intentions for the future. In Hope Theory, agency covers both your client's current characteristics, skill sets, and abilities as well as the perspectives and assumptions your client is also currently making about who they are and what they are capable of achieving. It is essentially the answer to the questions, "What are you learning about yourself?" Or "What do you hope to learn about yourself?" Exploring agency becomes an opportunity to ask questions that both explore a client's Being, as well as Learning, in ways that produce immense value for clients.

Crafting a name for the insight acts like a handle of a neatly-packed bag for clients to be able to pick up the idea and unpack it quickly for future use. Such names become terms in a personal vocabulary to be able to quickly recall important insights. And sometimes the process of crafting a name helps deepen the learning and add more clarity.

Why

A. Learning is intrinsically motivating.

The human brain is designed to learn, and learning feels good. Being intrinsically motivated is a wonderful form of sustainable, long-term motivation. It is a way for clients to move forward. Learning about themselves and the world around them helps clients stay motivated. It also creates excitement about being alive and the possibilities that lie ahead.

B. Learning fosters growth.

Growth adds a richness to life. When a client is not growing, there is a dullness or listlessness to their experiences. Learning is so powerful because it allows the client to continue reaching new levels, and to continue growing and stretching in new directions.

C. Deep insights increase hope and open pathways and possibilities.

Such growth and new directions help clients tap into positive perspectives, which opens up possibilities for more learning and effective action.

D. Gives action another dimension.

In a coaching session, the coach and the client will often create action lists. If a coach also checks in with what the client is learning, the coach helps the client add another dimension to the action. The actions become a way for the client to explore and gain more self-awareness and knowledge of their world.

How

1. Step into a mindset of being the student of your client.

From this perspective you can ask questions about the context, meaning, and importance of an insights. One of the best ways people learn is through the opportunity to share an idea with someone else. As a coach, if you assume the perspective of being your client's student, you can ask questions to have your client lead you through the steps or elements of the insight.

2. Lean into empathetic listening. Remain curious about what the client is learning.

Trust that a solution to the client's challenge will happen naturally. Watch for opportunities to become curious about insights your client is having about themselves, their agency, possible pathways, emotion, or any other aspect your client explores. When you listen empathetically while being naturally curious about what your client is learning during their exploration, you will find many openings and opportunities to ask deep, meaningful questions.

3. Have a few default learning questions ready to go in your coaching toolbox.

You can ask questions about Learning at almost any time during a coaching session, and it will create value for the client. The following are helpful questions to have in your toolbox to build from and tailor to your client:

- What are you learning about yourself?
- What are you learning about the situation?
- What do you need to learn in order to accomplish what you want?
- In what other areas of your life can this learning be applied?
- What did you learn in today's session?
- What has your Future Self learned that you have yet to learn?

4. Once a client hits upon an idea or insight, it's often helpful for you to draw attention to the process your client just went through to achieve it.

Bringing attention to the present moment is a powerful tool that adds value to the coaching process. When clients find an empowering perspective—or learning zone—on a coaching call, it's useful to bring attention to the present moment and the process that the client just went through to reach that perspective. Being aware of the ideas, emotion, or assumptions your client had to release is often just as important as the new insight.

5. Name the process. Name the insight.

Names don't have to be overly complicated. They could be a simple adjective or a short phrase, such as 'entering learning zone' or 'empowered soundtrack.'

6. Co-create action steps to test the insight, or explore additional ideas when the insight is applied to other areas of a client's life.

After naming the insight, it usually feels like a natural pivot point to designing an action step. You could ask something like, "What's an action step that would test this insight?"

Or you could continue the exploration by asking your client what other areas in their life they want to explore, or what happens when they apply this insight to those other areas. Either way, you're off and running in the session, continuing to stay curious, and continuing to deliver value to the client.

Inquiry

What

- **Powerful question to ponder**

An inquiry is a question designed for the client to ponder. In the context of a coaching session, a coach may leave the client with a powerful question to consider between the end of the current session and the beginning of the next.

- **Useful conclusion**

Inquiries are especially useful to quickly conclude a coaching session. For example, imagine you have another appointment coming up in a few minutes, yet the topic and coaching conversation is going really well with no real conclusion in sight. Creating a powerful question for your client to ponder for the next week is a beautiful tool to add value while concluding a session.

- **Many answers**

The question is designed to lead to several different insights and several possible answers, depending on circumstances and perspectives. A delightful way to start the next session is with your client answering the previous session's inquiry.

Sample Inquiry Questions:

- At what point in this situation do you trust and release control?
- When working, what distracts you?
- What keeps you focused?
- What do you really want out of this experience?
- Who do you have to be in order to be effective?
- What would being your best self look like this week?

Why

A. Relies on client's strength.

Inquiries are effective because they rely on the client's natural strength to come up with the answers to a question. As a coach, inquiries are best if they are short, open-ended, and designed to help a client approach a situation from many different points of view.

B. Addresses who the client is Being.

Inquiries are also useful because they address the client's core beliefs and motivations. Inquiries are often more about who the client is rather than what the client does. Coaching is so effective because the coach looks at both Being and Doing, while reinforcing client learning. The best inquiries include all three: Being, Learning, and Doing.

How

- 1. First, recognize that your client may benefit from asking themselves a question between now and the next session.**
- 2. Share that sometimes it's beneficial to keep exploring the topic between sessions, rather than having an action item, and ask your client if they would like to do just that.**
- 3. Pose two to three powerful questions as a starting point for developing an inquiry.**
Ask your client which question they would like to tweak to make their own for further reflection.
- 4. Alternatively, you can also ask your client what question they would like to explore further between now and when you meet next.**

This option is useful when you have an established coaching relationship and the client has had practice with experiencing powerful questions.

- 5. Determine with your client how often they would like to ask themselves the inquiry question between now and the next time you meet.**

Ask how your client will remember to consider the inquiry.

- 6. Design how you want to follow up with the inquiry at the next session.**

Assessment Wheels

Assessment wheels are simple tools designed to give a client an overview of their life - whether in just one aspect, or in more broad terms. For example, the *Wheel of Life*, one of the most popular assessment wheels, has categories that cover the most common meaningful areas of a person's life. Whatever categories you want to create for your an assessment wheel, you are helping your client explore different parts of their life which may have otherwise gone neglected for years.

What

When you start to look at an area that has been neglected, you might be tempted to ask your client about specific action steps they can take to improve that area. Avoid the temptation to jump into action questions when using an assessment wheel. The first aim of the wheel is simply to bring a curious mindfulness to your client's life. Here are the elements common to any assessment wheel:

- **Diagram of a wheel with wedges**

Each diagram includes a circle, divided into the appropriate number of wedges. Around each wedge is a label that describes an area of a client's life.

- **Different areas of life**

Each assessment wheel looks at different aspects of the client's life. The *Wheel of Life* deals with various aspects of one's life that span from career to family to personal growth.

- **Rating current level of satisfaction**

The coach asks the client to rate, on a scale of one to ten, their current level of satisfaction with each area of life.

- **Follow-up**

Usually a coach will follow up with powerful questions and well-designed actions.

The Classic Wheel of Life

The *Wheel of Life* is a standard life coaching exercise that helps the client develop a snapshot of different areas of their life. It invites clients to explore how satisfaction in one area of life may be connected with another.

- **Career (or *School* for students)**

Overall experience with the state of the client's professional or academic experience, including their choice in profession, their specific role and responsibilities, their opportunity for growth and advancement, and their relationships with co-workers.

- **Money (or *Grades* for students)**

How happy (or unhappy) the client is with their financial situation. It could be an assessment on happiness with savings, debt, income, expenses, thoughts and beliefs about money, and money habits.

- **Family**

The client's overall satisfaction in their relationships with immediate family. The client may break this wedge into two (immediate, as in the home, and extended, as in parents/siblings).

- **Significant Other/Best Friend**

The client's satisfaction level with their current relationship, romantic or platonic. If the client is single, how satisfied the client is with being single. Or how happy are they with their best friend.

- **Friends**

How satisfied is the client with their friendships? This includes what they give to those friendships, as well as what they receive from the friendships.

- **Community**

For community, start by having the client define what community means to them. Then, have them rate how connected they feel to that definition of community.

- **Fun**

How satisfied is the client with the amount of fun and/or relaxation they are experiencing? How much time are they making for fun and to relax?

- **Health**

How healthy the client feels, including exercise and diet. This wedge can also be divided into physical health and mental health.

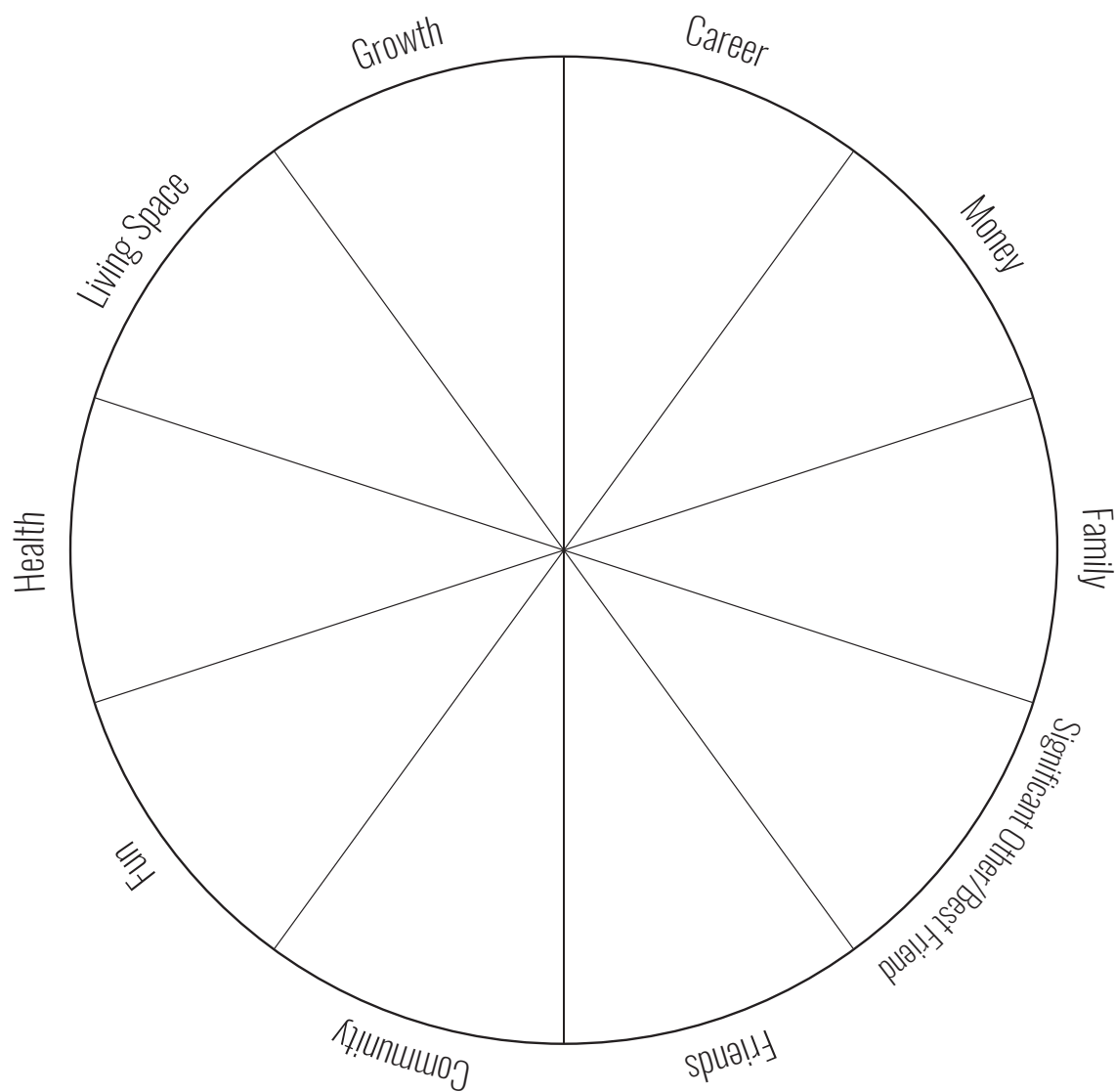
- **Living Space**

Satisfaction level with their actual house, apartment, or dorm. Or it could also be their general level of organization.

- **Growth**

What kind of growth is occurring? If none, why? If there is some, what kind? How does it feel?

The Classic Wheel of Life



How

1. Introduce the concept of the Wheel.

Explain how it's useful to look at your client's life in defined parts. It helps us see the connections and address any areas they may be neglecting.

2. Help your client create the Wheel.

Determine which assessment wheel you are going to use, and which categories, if any, you'd change to fit your client perfectly.

3. Draw a circle or use a copy of the diagram included in this training guide.

If you are having your client draw the wheel, have them divide the circle into pieces.

4. Ask your client to rate their current level of satisfaction for each area on a scale of one to ten, with ten being the most satisfied.

5. Ask your client powerful questions, such as:

- Looking at your wheel, what is most interesting to you?
- What are you learning about yourself as you explore the balance of these areas?
- What is the common thread between these two sections?

6. In the discussion following the creation of the Wheel, make sure to emphasize that the client is simply trying to increase their level of satisfaction just one notch higher.

One of the biggest assets of any assessment wheel is to help clients think of incremental improvement, rather than trying to go for a 10 or nothing.

7. Co-create one or two possible actions to take from this exercise, and co-create your client's coaching homework for the session.

For example, you could work with your client to design how they want to be with their stress level, what actions they want to design, what they want to become more aware of in their stress level and response, and what they want to focus on for next week.

8. Save and date the wheels.

It is a great exercise to look back and see that the action you take from doing this exercise really makes a difference in your life over the long-run. So often, successes can get buried in the details of living, so that we forget how reality looked and felt even three months ago. Consider this an exercise to make sure your client's life is balanced, a kick

in the pants to get them moving, and a tool to remind your client how far they have come.

Notes: After your client fills out their Wheel, be careful not to automatically ask what the lowest number is. In doing so, you may be setting the agenda for your client to automatically look at what is causing dissatisfaction. Instead, if you ask, “What jumps out at you?” there may be some surprising insight that is revealed, regardless of if the number is low, high, or somewhere in between. Often, a lot can be learned when clients take the time to see what is going well.

Address the Stress Wheel

The *Address the Stress Wheel* is a more wellness-specific coaching exercise that helps the client develop a snapshot of how they are handling stress in their daily lives.

What

These are the areas in the Address the Stress Wheel:

- **Exercise**

Regular exercise is the most well-researched activity you can do to reduce your level of stress. If you feel like you are stressed out and are not exercising, you do not have a good excuse to be stressed out. Exercise has more robust research than all the other elements on this list combined.

- **Outlet for Frustration**

Having a hobby (such as mountain biking) or something that you can look forward to helps manage your recovery from something stressful. Just *thinking* about the fun, stress-relieving activity is usually enough for people to minimize the impact of stress. Key questions: “What do you look forward to in your life?” “What system can you create to remember it when stressed?”

- **Prayer and Meditation**

There is also a strong foundation of research supporting the benefits of prayer, spirituality, and meditation to reduce stress. A relationship with God helps people put stressors into perspective and tap into the other factors to reduce stress.

- **Sleep**

Less than seven hours of sleep a night has been shown to spike levels of stress and not give the body time to recover for the next day. Sleep deprivation has the same effect on productivity as being intoxicated, and long-term sleep deprivation has been linked to a breakdown in immune system functioning.

- **Diet and Hydration**

Your diet and hydration levels have an impact on the level of stress your body feels. Inflammation, spiked blood sugar levels, dehydration, and inconsistent nutrition can have serious negative effects on health and well-being, leading to a higher baseline of physiological stress.

- **Social Support**

If you have friends – or a life coach – who can listen to you, your response to stress and glucocorticoids will be lower. Experiencing stress while isolated can be a huge challenge.

- **Predictability**

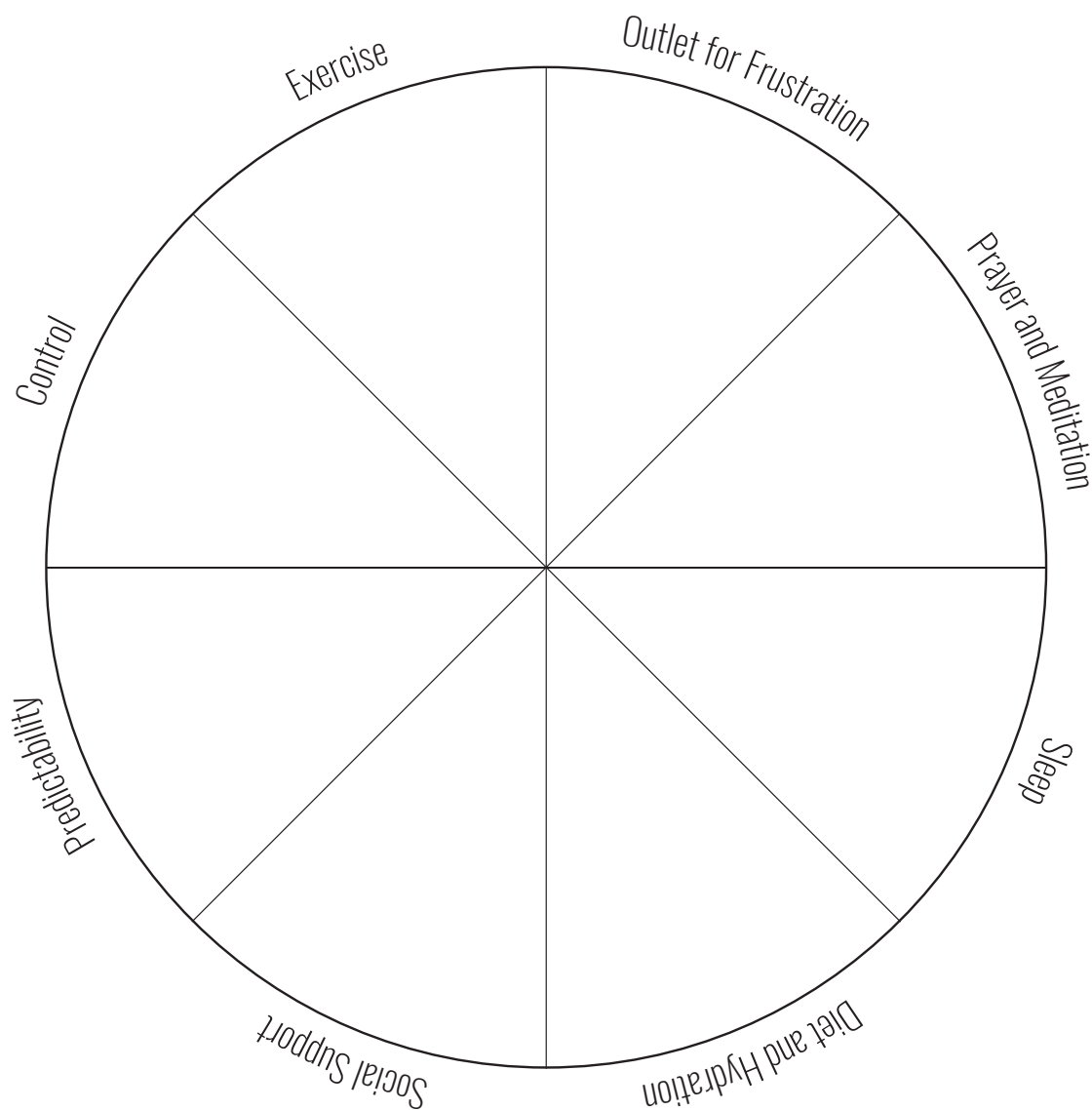
Anything you can do to help make your life more predictable when you're stressed out is going to reduce your stress. Bored or need something to shake it up? Then go the other direction and do something wild. Being able to think in terms of systems and predictability helps manage stressors.

- **Control**

Hope Theory and Growth-Mindset rule here. If you think you can control what's causing you pain, your stress levels will drop. If you think you can do the work to get where you want to go, setbacks aren't as stressful.

As a coach, you can also have your client fill out the *Address the Stress Wheel: Quick Version*. This shorter exercise only utilizes four of the eight areas listed above: exercise, meditation, spirituality, and friends.

Address the Stress Wheel



Why

Assessment Wheels work for the following reasons.

A. Quick assessment.

The assessment offers a quick, subjective assessment of the client's level of satisfaction in different areas. The effectiveness of the tool lies in the fact that it helps uncover different problem areas quickly.

B. Surprises.

Oftentimes, a client is surprised that they have not considered a certain area of life in some time. They realize the effect that neglect is having on their life.

C. Connections across areas of life.

The exercise highlights how different areas of our life or a specific topic are connected. If the client improves in one area, another area will probably improve as well.

D. Away from “all or nothing” thinking.

The scale of ten helps clients think in terms of elevating their current level of satisfaction by increments, not “all or nothing.” Such increments make it easier to create well-designed actions.

E. Easy introduction.

The *Wheel of Life*, in particular, is an easy introduction to many other areas of life coaching and what is important to your client. It often leads to solidifying the client's agenda.

Specific to Addressing Stress

Stress is an unavoidable part of life. Our bodies are finely tuned machines that deliver stress hormones in varying levels, depending on the perceived risk. There are 2 Golden Rules of Stress Management (and the *Address the Stress Wheel* addresses both of them):

A. Change your baseline level of stress.

Design your life to incorporate stress reducing activities (e.g., meditation and exercise), as well as develop a mindfulness and loving-kindness routine.

B. Design a system of *recovery* when you feel stressed out.

Especially using a combination of the above tactics to recover quickly to calm and focused.

How

1. Introduce the concept of the wheel.

Explain how it's useful to look at your client's life in defined parts, to see the connections, and to address any areas they may be neglecting.

2. Help your client create the wheel.

Determine which assessment wheel you are going to use and which categories, if any, you'd change to fit your client perfectly.

3. Draw a circle or use a copy of the diagram included in this training guide.

If you are having your client draw the wheel, have them divide the circle into pieces (10 for the *Wheel of Life* or 8 for the *Address the Stress Wheel*).

4. Ask your client to rate their current level of satisfaction for each area on a scale of one to ten, ten being the most satisfied.**5. Ask your client powerful questions such as:**

- Looking at your wheel, what jumps out at you?
- If you were to choose just one wedge and do one action to increase that number from a 7 to an 8 (for instance), what would that action be?
- To what degree do you want to follow through with the action? How could we confirm follow through?

6. **In the discussion following the creation of the wheel, make sure to emphasize that the client is simply trying to increase their level of satisfaction just one notch higher.**

One of the biggest assets of either wheel is to help clients think of incremental improvement rather than trying to go for a 10 or nothing.

7. **Create one or two possible actions to take from this exercise and create your client's coaching homework for the session.**

For example, with the *Address the Stress Wheel*, you could work with your client to design how they want to be with their stress level, what actions they want to design, what they want to become more aware of in their stress level and response, and what they want to focus on for next week.

Notes: After your client fills out their wheel, be careful not to automatically ask what the lowest number is. In doing so, you may be setting the agenda for your client to automatically look at what is causing dissatisfaction. Instead, if you ask, “What jumps out at you?” there may be some surprising insight that is revealed, regardless of whether the number is low, high, or somewhere in between. Oftentimes, a lot can be learned when clients take the time to see what is going well.

6: Client's Action

Chapter Overview

Action is where an idea becomes tangible. Designing effective action steps is at the core of coaching's value to a client. This section builds off of the previous two chapters to look at the elements of co-creating action steps with a client. The design of these three chapters mimics an ideal coaching session, where insights about Learning and Being lead naturally to inspiring and effective action steps.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Courageous, Confident, Inspiring

Skill-Check Questions

What are strategies for asking questions about a client's action?

What are the elements of a well-designed action?

When would I use brainstorming as a tool?

Well-Designed Actions

Clear and concise goals comprise one of the main elements of Hope Theory. Goals are the endpoint for pathways; they give clients a way to assess agency.³⁸ They are also necessary elements of theories about Flow and human flourishing.³⁹ Tough challenges matched with advanced skill sets is a formula for optimal experience. Whether implied or written down with excruciating clarity, goals are a ubiquitous part of daily life. And many studies show that setting goals increases productivity, increases happiness and a sense of accomplishment, and are a sign of solid mental and emotional health.⁴⁰ At its best, goal-focused coaching crafts goals that grow clients personally and professionally, and lead clients to take meaningful action that yields important insights. However, designing goals without taking into account the Learning or Being of a client often feels flat and can be frustrating to both the client and the coach. Such an approach tends to devolve into problem solving, solution hunting, and unsolicited advice.

In order to avoid the trap of problem solving, it's useful to let the strength of the insights generated during the exploration section of a coaching session lead naturally into designing action. Indeed, Coach Training EDU's life coach training program uses the term *well-designed actions* instead of *goals* to help coaches and clients avoid common traps of focusing too intensely on results and quick solutions at the expense of exploration and client-generated insights.

Ideally, a client comes to a coaching session with a clear goal in mind. As an example, let's imagine a client comes to a coaching session wanting to succeed in a specific project in the next three weeks. The timeline, clarity, and importance of the project make it easy to start with the goal and work backwards, crafting a series of logical action steps to follow that will lead to success. However, such approaches rarely work because human nature is not completely logical. Along the way, setbacks, both internal and external, crop up. Distractions will demand attention. Instead of trying first to create perfect goals, an experienced coach takes the time to explore a client's perspectives, empowering and limiting beliefs, assumptions about agency, facets of identity and personality characteristics, and other areas of a client's life before trying to design goals. With a foundation of meaningful insights gained from such an exploration, action steps that also include important insights and new pathways emerge naturally.

³⁸ Snyder, C. R. 2002. "Hope Theory: Rainbows in the Mind." *Psychological Inquiry*, vol. 13, no. 4, pp. 249–275.

³⁹ Csikszentmihalyi, Mihaly. 1990. *Flow: The Psychology of Optimal Experience*. New York: Harper & Row.

⁴⁰ Locke, E. A., Shaw, K. N., Saari, L. M., & Latham, G. P. 1981. Goal setting and task performance: 1969–1980. *Psychological Bulletin*, 90(1), 125–152.

When the force of an insight leads naturally to a curiosity about action steps, or even better, makes the next action step inescapably obvious, it's time to shift into action-crafting mode. It's at such a point that having a background and understanding of the many different aspects of a goal, and how to help clients craft well-designed actions, becomes extremely useful. The following section explores the different aspects of goals as a way to help you craft curious coaching questions. It continues by focusing on a few aspects and key ingredients to help clients create well-designed actions. And it concludes with a series of suggested steps to take to wrap up coaching sessions with well-designed actions that include meaningful insights and agreements about accountability.

What

A well-designed action starts with a broad goal, such as “I want to be successful in this project,” and creates more depth and clarity, such as “I want to get into a writing flow state for one hour or longer each day.” By exploring different facets of a goal and including insights gained during a coaching session, a coach has the opportunity to help clients create effective, meaningful action plans.

There are many different aspects of goals: clarity, positive vs. negative, extrinsic vs. intrinsic, result vs. process, proximity, commitment, complexity, frequency, variability, requirements, and measurability. And while it's useful to explore these areas, crafting a well-designed action picks four elements as a way to focus the process of turning a goal into an effective action plan. These are the four elements of a well-designed action:

- **Stated in the Positive**

Instead of “I want to stop procrastinating,” the well-designed action would be “I want to start my most meaningful work by 6:30 a.m.” The idea is to shift away from reactive motivation (avoiding what one doesn't want) to proactive motivation (going after what one does want).

- **Is 100% within the control of the client**

This requirement helps clients create process goals, which are more likely to include elements of learning, growth mindset, and insights from coaching sessions. For example, “I want to get positive feedback on my project,” becomes “I want to use an empowered perspective while writing for an hour a day.” While wanting positive

feedback is understandable, it doesn't focus attention on the process or on the present moment. It puts the focus out further in the future, and on something that is not entirely within the control of your client.

- **Is just the right size**

The idea is to design actions that are challenging enough to be exciting, but not too large to be unwieldy. This aspect helps clients gain more clarity on the structure and complexity of the action, as well as add a timeline to their plan.

- **Is specific and measurable**

Being able to measure success creates a deeper sense of motivation. While it can be challenging to measure something invisible (like an empowered perspective), going through the process of exploring what would make progress tangible adds value. It helps clients further clarify and revisit the complexity or systems needed to be successful. Measurability also makes accountability possible, which is an important aspect of an effective coach-client relationship.

Why

A. The process of turning a goal into a well-designed action offers opportunity for deep learning, insights, and increased creativity.

Thinking about goals tends to be extremely habitual, yet is almost completely unexplored. Often, people tend to overestimate what they can achieve in a day, and look for ways to mitigate feeling unworthy. Working with a coach helps clients see and release limiting beliefs. It's extremely energizing to raise awareness of one's usual way of thinking about goals and action plans. And it's empowering to explore ideas of agency, perspectives, and assumptions that one wants to carry into action.

B. An effective well-designed action balances results and process-based goals.

It helps balance extrinsic, outcome goals ("I want to be successful") with a focus on the steps and effort it takes to complete the action. Focusing on the process helps clients build self-confidence and increase momentum through a series of small successes.

C. Releasing worry about elements one cannot control frees more energy to be creative and focused on the work at hand, rather than on an unknown result.

Many goals create more stress because they usually involve a final outcome that falls outside our control. Especially when it feels like so many elements are left to chance, having specific action steps that are completely within one's control is extremely empowering. It adds a clarity and opportunity for clients to focus completely on the present moment, doing deep work that matters, and will most likely be a successful pathway to achieving spectacular outcomes.

D. Finding a balance between the size and complexity of a goal with the necessary skill set and timeline can spark tremendous motivation.

Usually goals are huge: get the promotion, run a marathon, buy a first house, send kids to college, achieve retirement, etc. These are great goals, but they are also long-term goals, making them too big for a well-designed action. A well-designed action takes a larger goal, like running a marathon, identifies exciting milestones, and breaks down the larger goal into manageable steps.

How

1. Let the insights gained from the coaching session lead to designing the action step.

Be mindful of jumping into action steps too soon in the session. Moving too quickly to action steps means that you may be coaching the problem, not the client. When a coach is designing actions with the client toward the beginning of the session, it is usually an indicator that you have not dug deep enough into the Being of the client, and you are focusing too much on the Doing.

2. Pivot seamlessly to action steps when it seems like exploring action will deepen insights.

When you get the sense that asking questions about what action steps or plans would test the strength of an insight or lead to a greater understanding of agency, it's time to

directly address action. You can shift the coaching session at any time to action using questions such as:

- Looking at everything we covered, what action step comes to mind? What action step would test this insight?
- What would be an exciting step for you to take between now and next session? How do you want to apply this insight to action?
- What's the next specific milestone? What step would make this idea tangible?

3. Use other coaching techniques while designing actions, such as brainstorming or busting limiting beliefs.

To help spark creativity and excitement, you can use coaching tools, such as brainstorming and challenge, to encourage your client to consider additional pathways. Landing on the perfectly planned pathway is not as important as clients experiencing the process of crafting effective and exciting well-designed actions. Having the ability to get back into a creative, hopeful space while developing plans can turn into a powerful habit and a tremendous asset for a client.

4. Explore the elements of goals and well-designed actions to raise awareness and deepen insights.

Use your knowledge of the many different aspects of goals and elements of a well-designed action to inform your curiosity. Ideally, a coach allows their understanding of a concept to inform their curiosity while still tailoring questions to your client's situation and what your client just said. You can use the following questions as they are, or as starting points to ask insight-provoking questions about action:

- How complex or simple do you want to design this action?
- How much of this action plan do you completely control?
- What aspects can you control?
- How many variables do you need to consider in order to be successful?
- What is the simplest measurement of success?
- What's the ideal frequency of the action?
- What would help you focus on the process?

- How does this action step relate to the ideas you have about your innate talent?
- What balance do you want to strike between a learning zone and a performance zone?
- How does measuring progress impact your motivation?

5. Clarify a well-designed action by going through all four elements.

Most likely, you have already addressed most of the four elements by exploring and using some of the questions above. However, it's useful to run through the elements to complete designing an effective action plan.

6. Bring in the perspective of leadership, if appropriate.

When a client takes action, it often impacts more than the client, because many well-designed actions involve others and the community. Part of a client's excitement about taking action is the impact that it has on others from a personal leadership perspective.

7. Make agreements about accountability.

The final step is to address how your client wants to be held accountable - and agree on communication between sessions. Often, it's helpful for clients to send a quick message to the coach when following through. See the section on Accountability in Chapter Two for a deeper discussion on accountability and its importance to being a professional and effective coach.

8. When following up on action steps in the next session, it's useful to think of results as feedback, not judgment.

From the point of view of life coaching, the results from a client's action are a form of feedback that provides valuable information for the client and coach. Without the weight of judgment on success or failure, both the coach and the client can more accurately determine which steps need to be fine-tuned, and which can be tossed aside completely.

Brainstorming

What

Brainstorming is the process of generating multiple outcomes, creating a list of options and possible actions, and developing solutions without judging the usefulness of the ideas. The primary purpose in a life coaching session is to get the client thinking about ideas and options that they might not have ever considered. Brainstorming is a way of opening up and discovering more options and opportunities that the client can later explore through actions. Here are the key elements of brainstorming from a coaching perspective:

- **Creativity**

Brainstorming is a process of creating new ideas. Often in life coaching sessions, coach and client will take turns generating ideas. The fundamental basis of any brainstorm activity is that of creation. It is trusting the imagination and letting it flow. Keep in mind that this exercise is about generating new ideas, and not about giving the client advice.

- **Absence of judgment; safety to create**

In order for any brainstorming session to be fruitful, it is important to release judgment and not censor new ideas. This is a crucial component because generating ideas only happens in an atmosphere of comfort and safety.

- **Momentum**

Flow and momentum is created when coach and client go back and forth in the creation process. That rhythm sets a pace and helps both parties refrain from judging the ideas.

- **Excitement**

Brainstorming is fun and creates excitement. This excitement helps move the process forward and aids in momentum.

- **A list**

The end result of a successful brainstorming session is a list of opportunities, ideas, and actions your client can take. This does not mean that the list is inclusive of all of the ideas generated by coach and client. However, it does form a foundation for the client to move forward and design an action based on the newly-created list.

Why

A. Safety is created when judgment is placed aside.

Generally speaking, when ideas are created, there are two steps: the creation of the idea and the judgment of that idea. Those two actions usually occur simultaneously, and sometimes clients even judge the idea before they say it. The client's internal editor or *Inner Critic* may be harsh and judge the idea before it is created. This does not allow for the free flow of creation. It is crucial for coach and client to approach the creative process in two steps, and set aside final judgment of an idea when looking to develop creative solutions and options. This is what makes brainstorming so effective.

B. Practice stretches the creativity muscle.

Successful brainstorming stretches that creative muscle. Idea generating, like any mental or physical skill, gets stronger by being exercised. It's a skill that gets better with practice.

C. Building on each others' ideas strengthens the coach-client relationship.

Accepting and sharing ideas generates trust between the coach and client, which further increases a sense of safety. Such safety strengthens the coach-client relationship and encourages the client to share even more deeply and try out new ideas.

D. It naturally adopts a positive mindset of possibility.

The simple act of brainstorming puts both the coach and the client in the mindset that all of these ideas and actions are possible. The power of a positive mindset is that it helps clients identify the assumptions they are making. It also helps them discover the many resources they have available, aligning their action with positive assumptions.

How

1. Recognize good opportunities to brainstorm creative solutions.

As a coach, you understand the different perspectives that your client can use. Know that when you are starting a brainstorming session, you are automatically tapping into a positive perspective that embraces possibilities.

2. Ask your client if they want to brainstorm some possible actions, perspectives, values, or structures.

3. Explain to your client that the process of delaying judgment aids the creative process, and urge them to refrain from editing or judging themselves.

4. Briefly design with your client how you want to proceed with the brainstorming.

Most often, coach and client will take turns coming up with ideas. Sometimes the client will get on a roll and throw out several ideas in a row. Sometimes a coach will start with two or three ideas before the client gets warmed up.

5. Suggest ideas you feel may be useful, but be willing to let go of any ideas that the client does not take to.

6. Start creating ideas.

Pay attention to the pace and the tendency to judge the idea as soon as it comes up. As a coach, you can also short-circuit the judgment instinct by generating crazy ideas and keeping the momentum light and free from the *Inner Critic*. Demonstrating the free flow of ideas—even if they are silly—will help the client join in the spirit of the brainstorm.

7. Let your client choose the actions, perspectives, structures, or ideas they want to move forward with, and follow up by creating well-designed actions.

7: Essential Coach Qualities

Chapter Overview

This chapter revisits the 7 Essential Coach Qualities first introduced at the beginning of this book. This section goes into further detail about the elements of each quality, ideas about how to cultivate each quality, and ways to demonstrate it in a coaching session. These qualities act as the standards necessary for coaches to meet in order to become a certified life coaches.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

All 7 are covered

Skill-Check Questions

What are the 7 Essential Coach Qualities?

What are the defining elements of each quality?

What are coaching strategies or questions to use to demonstrate each quality in a coaching session?

Essential Coach Qualities

Now that the foundation of coaching has been established in the first six chapters, it's time to revisit the Essential Coach Qualities. These qualities are: Professional, Empathetic, Empowering, Curious, Courageous, Confident, and Inspiring.

These are the essential qualities of being an effective, masterful coach. While this book covers many coaching tools that may or may not be used in any one coaching session, a masterful coach demonstrates each of these seven Essential Coach Qualities in each coaching session.

A key element of ensuring that you continually increase your coaching skills is to elicit feedback from your clients, and to listen to or watch recordings of your coaching. This section outlines specific skills and questions based on coaching's core competencies to ask yourself as you review your coaching sessions.

1. Professional

1. A coach establishes clear expectations about the coaching process, and adheres to high ethical standards.

A professional coach establishes clear expectations about coaching and the coaching process with the client and sponsor (such as a parent, university, or organization) if present. Establishing expectations also requires a coach to manage the various roles that a coach may play in a client's life. For example, in a university setting, an advisor might also be tasked with coaching students, or an executive coach with extensive experience in a select area might be called on as an advisor. Professionalism is demonstrated by the coach's ability to define coaching succinctly, successfully set outcomes, and delineate the different roles a professional might take when working with clients, students, or athletes.

2. A coach maintains confidentiality, respects a client's experience and identity, and knows when to refer clients to other professionals.

Maintain confidentiality, avoid conflicts of interest, and uphold the other ethical and professional standards, such as being aware of the boundaries of coaching, and when to refer clients to additional resources. This also includes creating clear expectations and agreements with the sponsor if present.

3. A coach sets clear outcomes for the overall coaching relationship, as well as effective agendas for each coaching session.

Establish an effective agenda at the beginning of a coaching session to set a strong foundation for the rest of the session. Eliciting the agenda from the client empowers the client to look proactively at their life, and choose what they want to focus on. Asking the client to set the agenda underlines the principle that the client is the expert in their own life, and the role of the coach is to clarify and explore that agenda. An effective agenda includes exploring a topic ("T"), the importance of the topic ("I"), a way to measure the effectiveness ("M"), and the coach echoing back to ensure understanding and clarity ("E")—the T.I.M.E. model.

4. A coach designs an alliance with a client to empower the coaching relationship.

Proactively design the way you as a coach work with your client. The technical term in the coaching world is "Design the Alliance", and it refers to directly addressing various points regarding how your client wants you to be as their coach, from the degree to how hard you push your client, to how often your client wants to check in with you between sessions. A Designed Alliance is your opportunity as a coach to empower your client with the opportunity to make suggestions and give you feedback to make your coaching even more useful to your client. It's also a time for you as a coach to ask your client their preferences regarding your coaching style, categories of questions, or ways to help them follow through on action steps.⁴¹

5. A coach addresses and co-creates systems to help clients maintain accountability and follow through on action steps.

Accountability is where the rubber meets the road. Managing progress and accountability is a skill that coaches display by combining curious questions with direct communication in order to help clients develop a plan - in addition to action steps - to ensure follow-through. Oftentimes, helping clients think about accountability and why it is important for them to follow through helps boost the chances that your client will complete the designed action plan.

A large part of the value a client receives from coaching is in having a coach hold them accountable.

Additional skill-check questions:

- Did the coach address the client's previous accountability early in the session?
- To what degree does the coach trust a client to follow through on accountabilities?
- How well does the coach ask for feedback from the client regarding how the coaching session is addressing the client's needs?

Suggested questions to ask:

- How did you do with your previous accountability?
- How can I help hold you accountable to complete these actions next week?

⁴¹ See Chapter 2, Design the Alliance, for a more detailed description of the coaching element.

- What version of yourself do you have to be to accomplish this action?
- What is your relationship to accountability?
- How easy or hard will it be to follow-through on this accountability?
- What would make it easier to hold yourself accountable?

How this shows up on a coaching assessment:

- Does the coach ask questions about the value of the coach-client relationship in the larger context of the client's objectives?
- Does the coach ask questions that apply the same insight to different areas of the client's life to provide even more value to the client?
- Does the coach help the client develop larger strategic goals and design actions from a long-term perspective?

Suggested questions to use in coaching sessions:

- What is your long-term strategy?
- What value do you want to get from this coach-client relationship? How does that relate to your larger objectives?
- What adjustments do I need to make as a coach to ensure that you're getting what you need from coaching?

2. Empathetic

1. **A coach listens actively to clients, seeking to understand clients within the context of their lives, and to create a safe space for clients to share freely.**

Empathetic listening is the core skill of coaching. It's what a coach *does* each minute of every session. It's a proactive activity, requiring the coach to actively imagine *what it is like to be the client in the client's life, in what the client is currently describing, as well as right now in this session*. Such a stance in listening takes trusting your imagination, intuition, and natural curiosity to help you arrive at the next powerful question or direction to take the coaching session.

2. **A coach generates questions from the client's perspective, asking questions designed to elicit insights.**

When you listen from such a perspective, it makes sense to ask questions from the viewpoint of your client. The first way a coach demonstrates this skill is by avoiding questions designed to get information, and instead asking questions designed to elicit insight. Information-based questions might look at what has worked in the past, or gather information that someone would need in order to make a recommendation (for example, a weekly schedule of current activities). Insight-based questions focus on what the client might not yet have considered. For example:

"What is it like saying that out loud?"

"What do you hope to learn about yourself in the next week?"

"What do you want to say to yourself two months from now?"

3. **A coach recognizes subtle shifts of energy, as well as patterns and themes in a client's life.**

The other way this skill shows up is in the degree to which a coach recognizes small shifts in a client's perspective, energy, or emotion. When you listen from an empathetic perspective for extended lengths of time, you start to recognize changes and shifts in your client that even your client does not notice, or quickly dismisses. By bringing awareness to the present moment and the shift that just happened, you help your client

become more mindful, and raise awareness of certain patterns that are extremely useful to address. Listening so closely makes clients feel seen and heard, and it creates a tremendously strong bond between a coach and a client. Such a strong relationship creates a safe space for clients to dig deep and explore areas that are hard to navigate successfully solo. Empathetic listening and the recognition of such small shifts adds depth which provides tremendous value through coaching.

Additional skill-check questions:

- Did the coach listen for opportunities to ask questions beyond just fixing or addressing the problem?
- Did the coach ask the question based on listening between the lines?

Suggested coaching questions:

- Although you're not directly saying it, it seems to me that this is also really important to you?
- What's the relationship between what you're saying now and what you said a few minutes ago?
- It seems that your energy shifted just now. What happened?

3. Empowering

1. **One of the best uses of a coaching exercise is to offer an insightful starting point or a scaffold for a coach's curiosity to ask powerful questions that move a client forward.**

This quality looks at how well you are able to balance expert knowledge and coaching exercises with fully empowering the client to determine the topic and direction of the coaching. A coach looks for opportunities to ask questions from the perspective of being a student of your client. To meet this coaching standard, after you share expert information, it's best to shift immediately into empowerment mode to ask your client what they want to do with the information. If your client chooses to ignore or go against it, it's your job to follow them. If they choose to adopt and use it, that's great too, and it's your job to shift back into complete curiosity mode. One of the trickiest parts of coaching is to find the synergy between providing expert knowledge and leaning into empowerment coaching.

2. **A coach tailors coaching exercises and tools to fit the client.**

The second way this concept shows up is in the way you adapt to fit your client's language and paradigm. Over-explaining coaching tools, or reading questions from a list, makes coaching sessions feel flat. It misses the opportunity to connect meaningfully with your client. Clients want to feel seen and heard. An expert coach seamlessly melds the structure of a coaching exercise with what the client just said. The whole conversation feels so natural that someone listening in might think that two people are having an amazing conversation, without realizing all of the coaching tools, exercises, and skills happening in the background.

How this shows up on a coaching assessment:

- Did the coach ask short, open-ended questions?
- Did the questions the coach asked lead to new insights for the client?
- Were the questions primarily present- or future-tense oriented?
- How well did a coach choose an exercise to work with a client?
- How well did a coach adapt the exercise to the client with apt questions?

4. Curious

1. **A coach asks powerful questions designed to elicit a deeper awareness; explore a client's current assumptions, ideas, and emotions; and look toward the future.**

Curiosity comes from the Latin word *cura*, which means *to care, ask about*. Combined with listening empathetically from the client's perspective, curiosity is a way of deeply caring for someone else. Such listening and asking questions is a gift that allows a client to explore more of themselves and what is truly most important in their lives. Curiosity shows up more clearly in the structure and topics of the questions a coach asks. The most effective structure is termed a *Powerful Question*. Powerful Questions are short (ten words or fewer), and start with open-ended question words such as *What*, *Why*, and *How*. The other aspect of Powerful Questions is the quality and range of a coach's curiosity to include a balance of Learning, Being, and Doing questions, covering both a client's agency and possible pathways.⁴²

2. **A coach continues to ask meaningful questions that help clients go beyond current understanding, transforming judgement into curiosity, and helping clients clarify and define new insights and ideas.**

This skill shows up most clearly when the coach elicits deeper ideas and emotions by simply staying curious. When a coach stays in curiosity, keeps asking questions, and finds a deeper agenda for the client, clients are on a journey with a completely new territory of thought and emotion. The probability of stumbling upon new and meaningful insights skyrockets. One such opportunity is at the beginning of each coaching session when setting the session agenda. When exploring the importance of a surface agenda, there is often an opportunity to look at another, more fundamental agenda that would have an impact on the current challenge, as well as on many other areas in a client's life. A skilled coach is able to listen for opportunities to ask questions that change a client's perspective or perhaps uncover and challenge limiting beliefs. The job of the coach is to listen from the perspective of the client to such a degree that the client feels self-judgement transformed to curiosity and progress.

Additional skill-check questions:

⁴² See the introductory chapter for a more detailed description of Powerful Questions.

- Does the agenda come mostly from the client, or is the coach pushing or not identifying the client's agenda?
- After the agenda is clear, does the coach explore and allow the client to dig deeper by making more connections to other areas of a client's life or the meaning behind the agenda?
- Is the session agenda measurable?
- Does the coach repeat the agenda and confirm the client's agreement on the agenda for extra clarity?

Suggested coaching questions:

- What would you like to focus on today?
- What outcome would make the time we have together worth it?
- Just to be clear, in this session you would like to focus on [what the client just said] and come away with [two new tools] to use for this next week?

5. Courageous

1. **An effective professional coach is able to create a safe space that invites sharing and boldness.**

Coaching requires the coach to be comfortable with vulnerability and taking risks by asking tough questions. Coaching courage shows up in the coach's willingness to take risks, ask tough questions, and address the elephant in the room if one is romping around.

2. **A coach is willing to be direct and state their observations, insights, and suggestions without being attached to whether the client agrees with the idea or not.**

Suggesting solutions is a tricky area for a coach, because many coaching qualities suggest the coach refrain from being the expert, providing solutions, or telling a client what to do and how to do it. However, in practice, the coach will have suggestions and ideas for the client. Courage as a coaching quality addresses how well the coach is able to share those suggestions or insights with the client from a life coaching perspective. In a coaching session, this involves saying what you think (giving a suggestion/idea), and following it up with a powerful question. For example: *I think you're deluding yourself here. What are your thoughts?* or *I think you really need to take this step. What do you think?* Not being attached to the rightness or wrongness of your intuition or suggestion allows you to fully empower your client. And if your intuition or idea is off the mark, clients usually follow up with articulating what would make your suggestion fit perfectly. Even when wrong, you have provided your client with an effective starting point to evoke an insight.

How this shows up on a coaching assessment:

- Does the energy on the coaching call feel safe?
- Does the coaching conversation reflect intimacy and strength in the coach/client relationship?
- Was the coach bold in asking insightful or risky powerful questions?
- Did the coach work with the energy present in the coaching conversation?

- Did the coach interact with the client and the client's energy, rather than stick to a scripted exercise?

6. Confident

1. **A professional coach leans into the three trusts in coaching - trust your client, trust yourself, and trust the process - and embraces pausing and silence as useful elements of a coaching session.**

Expert coaches trust the coaching process. Beginning coaches often try to force insights, rush to ask the next question, or paraphrase and explain where their question is coming from. Experienced coaches are completely comfortable with pausing to allow ten to twenty seconds of silence before asking the next question, or pausing after the client is done speaking to think about the next question. Such comfort with silence comes from the coach trusting that the client is also processing ideas and emotion in the silence.

2. **An expert coach trusts the client's resilience and brilliance.**

The coach assumes that a client is resourceful and capable of achieving what they want to achieve. The coach's role is not to offer suggestions or try to over-help, but rather to let the client do the heavy lifting in the session. A coach avoids trying to problem solve, and instead focuses on simple, curious questions to prompt the client to do the necessary inner work to arrive at insights, solutions, and action steps. Confidence shows in the degree a coach continues to explore for insights about Learning, Being, client agency, perspective, and characteristics without trying to come up with an immediate action plan. An experienced coach is confident that the client's exploration will unfold in such a way that the new insights will naturally lead to an exciting and effective action plan for the client to take between sessions.

Suggested coaching questions:

- Out of everything we discussed in the session so far, what action do you want to take?
- In taking this action next week, what do you hope to learn?
- How does this action relate to your larger agenda?

7. Inspiring

1. A professional coach inspires clients to take bold action steps and design effective systems.

An effective coach guides clients to create exciting action steps that are small enough to be manageable, yet large enough to be meaningful. This quality shows up most clearly in the strength of the well-designed actions a coach and client co-design. A well-designed action includes these elements: being stated in the positive, effective size-to-time ratio, starting and ultimate success is completely controlled by the client, and the measurement of success is tangible.

2. A coach effectively ties action with Learning and Being, addressing both a client's agency and possible pathways.

When a coach also asks questions about how the action step relates back to a client's agency (Learning and Being), they add another dimension to the coaching. When clients are taking action steps not only to get the tasks completed, but also to learn more about themselves, the effectiveness of a certain perspective, or how well they can use the tasks to develop another skill set, action steps become that much more meaningful. When the action step seems to combine equal measures of action and learning, the coach is doing well, and likely creating action and learning steps that inspire even bolder action in the future.

3. A coach co-designs accountability with clients, and addresses the strategic and session agendas effectively.

The final piece to designing inspiring action steps ties back to addressing accountability and the best ways for the coach to follow up during the next coaching session. Designing an Alliance around accountability ties back into the first coaching quality: Professional, and completes the coaching core quality loop.

How this shows up on a coaching assessment:

- To what degree is the client the main designer of the action?
- Does the designed action also include developing greater awareness of learning for the client?

- How well does the designed action relate to the session and deeper agendas?

8: Vision

Chapter Overview

Having a clear, compelling vision makes it easier to find and maintain motivation. It provides a benchmark for decision making.

This chapter looks at elements of a compelling vision to help clients create a vision they feel connected to. It also examines coaching exercises to help clients design structures to use vision as a tool to spark and maintain meaningful productivity.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Empathetic, Empowering, Confident

Skill-Check Questions

What are the elements of vision from a coaching perspective?

What specific aspects of a vision recording make it useful?

Vision

What

Creating vision is a life coaching skill that unlocks the client's ability to imagine an experience in the future. Both coach and client must trust the client's own imagination. Vision is such a central element to life coaching because coaches can help clients clearly see what is possible for them in the future, and use their imagination to think of what it will be like in that future position.⁴³ It is one of the best tools that coaches have. Helping clients use vision in their lives has five components:

- **Imagination**

Imagination is central to the vision process. Jumping into a vision for the future is an act of faith that requires trusting the imagination.⁴⁴ It uses a series of pointed questions that allow a vision to naturally emerge.

- **Awareness of what is most important**

There are no right or wrong answers when it comes to vision and what a client wants in the future. Sometimes it is a challenge for clients to answer questions that have no right or wrong answers. Part of what makes vision so useful is that instead of looking for what is right or wrong, coaches look for what seems to have the most impact and what aligns with the client's values. Vision requires awareness of the client's priorities and focus.⁴⁵

- **The bigger picture**

Vision often requires looking at something from a larger point of view, and identifying the significance of the action steps that lead to the larger goals. Especially if those larger strategic goals have a name, it's useful to reference them in the vision.

⁴³ Weinberg, Robert. (2008). Does Imagery Work? Effects on Performance and Mental Skills. *Journal of Imagery Research in Sport and Physical Activity*. 3.

⁴⁴ Cumming, Jennifer & Williams, Sarah. (2012). The Role of Imagery in Performance.

⁴⁵ Ungerleider, S., & Golding, J. M. (1991). Mental practice among Olympic athletes. *Perceptual and Motor Skills*, 72(3, Pt 1), 1007–1017.

- **Little details**

Vision sometimes requires looking at the minute details of the future and making those little details more visceral.⁴⁶ These details can include descriptions of the actions necessary to be successful, as well as the evidence that the plan is working.

- **Stamina**

Using imagination requires energy and stamina. Especially if the client is not used to tapping into imagination in this way, staying focused on what life will be like in the future can be a challenge. A coach's well-developed stamina and ability to stick with clients for longer periods of time is a vital skill.

Why

A. Creating a vision is pragmatic.

People rarely take intentional time out of their busy day to reflect mindfully on what they really want in the future. In a coaching session, clients can leverage time by determining the best action to take and what would lead to fulfillment. This avoids wasting time on things that are not that important or that will ultimately not lead to the larger vision. So, while taking time to think about a vision does not on the surface appear to move a client forward quickly, it is one of the most pragmatic steps to move forward and achieve larger, significant goals.

B. Vision increases hope and mitigates delayed gratification.

Creating a vision and adding lots of details, especially to a vision that has a lot of meaning for the client, is a way of making the future vision more real in the face of present circumstances. That hope for the future keeps the client moving forward, and helps them cope with delaying gratification. The client learns the value of putting work into their vision; actions become vital to achieving that vision of the future. Vision is a central element to positively and sustainably managing motivation.

⁴⁶ Liebermann, Dario G. & Katz, Larry & Sorrentino, Ruth. (2005). Experienced Coaches' Attitudes Towards Science and Technology. *International Journal of Computer Science in Sport*. 4.

C. Crafting a new vision can provide prospective on a topic client's might feel stuck in.

When using vision, paying attention to a new point of view is powerful for the client. For example, the *Bird's Eye View* perspective (see Session 20) gives the client the opportunity to imagine all of the little details while also looking at the bigger picture. When imagining the *Future Self* (see Session 14), the client creates the perspective looking back from fifteen years in the future.

D. It takes practice.

Imagination gets better with practice, especially when the client starts by creating a vision for just a few weeks into the future and then takes steps to make the vision happen. The experience can be surreal when they realize that it is possible for the imagined vision to be achieved—they can literally live their dream. Excitement builds as a result of understanding the visioning practice. One experience of a successfully achieved vision will help clients create additional vivid and useful pictures for other things they want in their future.

E. It highlights potential obstacles.

During the course of creating a vision, clients can identify potential obstacles and create preemptive methods to overcome these obstacles.

F. It pinpoints needed resources.

In the same way that visioning helps a client become aware of obstacles, it can also help them to understand what resources need to be emphasized, developed, or sought out.

G. It highlights a specific action and when it needs to happen.

Often, the client feels vertigo when becoming aware of all the steps necessary for something to happen. For example, a client might make the decision to get up early on Tuesday and exercise. But that decision is not made on Tuesday morning. More likely, that decision was made on Monday evening while sitting around. The process can help the client determine specifically when they will follow through. Vision can help the client create a system to make decisions that are based on values.

How

An important part of the vision process is called *Future Pacing* (See Chapter 18 for insight regarding how to use *Future Pacing* as its own tool). *Future Pacing* is jumping to some point in the future and imagining what that reality will be like. That timeframe could be two weeks, three months, or ten years.

- 1. Introduce the idea of creating a vision and a structure, then become clear on the timeframe.**

Three months is probably the easiest place to start, and provides a great structure to remind your client of a well-designed action to take.

- 2. Ask your client powerful questions to elicit both the bigger picture view and the meaning behind creating this structure.**

You can also use the *Wheel of Life* as a starting point, or look at one day in your client's life three months from now.

- 3. Now that you have identified some point in the future, pace the reality.**

Take your client through the steps at the speed it would really be happening, and ask them to imagine what this new reality would be like.

- 4. Imagine and capture the little details.**

Once the timeframe, bigger picture, and reasons are clear, the next step is to flesh out the vision with specifics. Sometimes those details are the most valuable part and make the exercise come to life for your client. Such questions could be about what they would see, hear, or feel once they reach their goal (e.g. What would it be like to walk into that first day of their new dream job?)

- 5. Design the structure for your client to be reminded of this vision.**

Determine how your client wants to capture this vision. Do they want to create a sound recording of what a day in their life will be like? Do they want to create a series of images? How often will your client be reminded of this vision?

6. Repeat the process.

Three months will pass, and your client will have the opportunity to be in the timeframe of the vision. Once a client has the experience of living one vision, they can fine tune the next vision and create a new structure for the next couple of weeks, months, or a year.

Vision Recording

A client's Vision Recording is essentially a tool to focus energy and overcome limiting beliefs. It relies on your client's imagination by asking them to create a vivid vision of what the future could be. The exercise primes your client for future exercises in the coaching journey. The recording also captures that first vision of what your client wanted to accomplish. Once the goal is accomplished, your client can look back in awe at the power of their imagination and action.

Clients can also opt to create a written version, an illustration, or a collection of pictures that serves the same purpose. You can co-create with your client whatever format works best.

What

- **Sound recording**

A vision recording is a sound recording, usually about three to five minutes long, that records someone's future goals and outcomes, with some music in the background.

- **Specific imagery**

The more specific and detailed the vision recording, the better. Tangible realities, such as holding a job offer letter, or seeing the smile on your first paying client's face, are great specific images that are useful for the recording.

- **Short and simple sentences**

It's best not to get too complicated. Simple is good.

- **Present or past tense (not future)**

Verbs used are in the present or past tense, not the future. When researching the power of mental training and visualization (e.g. how Olympians train), it was often mentioned that the most useful visualizations are spoken in the present tense. It's important to imagine the event *as it's happening*, or looking back at the accomplishment *as if it has already happened*. The technical term is called *Future Pacing*.

- **Importance of emotion**

Along with the details and the setting, it is important to get into the emotion of the moment. What does it feel like—or what did it feel like—to have accomplished this?

Why

A. Provides motivation toward what clients want.

The recording reminds clients of what's possible and helps them tap into motivation toward the future that they want.

B. Boosts the mood.

Music evokes emotion. There is something deeply emotional about hearing yourself describe your goals set to music. It's an immediate mood booster.

C. Makes motivation habitual.

Motivation styles are habitual. Listening to one's vision recording makes changing motivation habits much easier because the mind is constantly reminded of the new scenario your client wants to create.

How

1. **Introduce the concept of creating a vision recording or another structure, such as a collage or illustration, to help the client move forward consistently with a strong focus in mind.**
2. **Have clients complete another Wheel of Life.**

However, instead of going through and rating where they are currently, ask clients to explore each area of the Wheel in turn, and ask what would happen (what their life would look like, what emotions they would experience, etc.) if each area was a perfect, or near-perfect, ten.

3. Ask for tangible details that would happen if important milestones were reached.

The more details they include, the more vivid the exercise and recording become for your client. You can ask questions about what your client would see, hold, or hear once something is accomplished.

4. Ask about the new habits or process your client has also adopted to realize the vision.

You can add value to the exercise by helping your client identify steps taken and habits formed, in addition to the goals outlined. Ideally, your client will create a balance of both big-picture goals and well-designed actions and habits for the recording.

5. Plan the next steps of your client making an actual recording using the notes from the coaching session.

The notes your client makes in the assessment wheel serves as the beginning of a script for the recording. While so much value is created by having your client clarify what they want to have on the recording, the next step is to plan action steps to create the actual recording.

6. Design accountability.

Usually, clients want to share their recordings the next time they meet with their coach. It's helpful to design accountability with your clients about how they want to use their recordings.

Flourishing in Flow

The Wellness Coaching to Flourish Model looks at the conditions of doing your life's work and analyzes each of the conditions to achieve what positive psychology calls *flow*, a state where your skill level matches the present challenge. The aim of wellness coaching is to help a client experience states of flow that align with their life's purpose. To achieve such a state consistently, someone must find a balance between increasing skills to meet increasingly difficult challenges. Each wellness chapter has focused on coaching exercises that help the client unpack their present challenges, and identify steps to increase their skill level to meet those challenges.

The guiding principle: Clients who flourish continually push potential in doing their life's work.⁴⁷

What

The state of flow has a set of conditions which guide a coach's questions as they explore flourishing with their client. Those conditions are: the setting, challenge, skills, focus, and performance.

- **Setting**

Flow occurs in a specific setting. It could be, for example, a playing or practice field, a writing desk, the amusement park, or the woods. Identifying the setting helps clients plan for flow consciously and intentionally.

- **Challenge**

Flow requires a challenge that pushes your client to develop an ever increasingly powerful skill set. Playing a game, writing a novel, and running on a forest trail all require facing some sort of challenge. If the challenge level is too high, frustration builds. If too low, there is not enough interest to push the skills. Indeed, flow *requires* the challenge to continually increase to stay in a state of flow. It is the reason why extreme athletes who experience flow continue to push the bounds of crazier and crazier stunts

⁴⁷ For more insight on Flow from the perspective of positive psychology, see:

- Csikszentmihalyi, Mihaly. "Flow, the secret to happiness." TED2004. February 2004, https://www.ted.com/talks/mihaly_csikszentmihalyi_on_flow
- Csikszentmihalyi, Mihaly. Flow: The Psychology of Optimal Experience. New York: Harper Perennial Modern Classics, 2008.

and accomplishments. The accomplishment is only a small part of the equation. Being able to continue in flow is the larger focus.

- **Skills**

Feeling like you are pushing your skill set to the limit and experiencing the thrill of success in the face of a challenging obstacle is the best. As your client overcomes increasingly difficult challenges, your client's skill set continues to develop. Looking at the skill set necessary to reach the next level is an important aspect of designing for flow.

- **Focus**

Flow requires focus. Planning for flow often involves preparation to address or completely remove distractions, such as writing that pesky email or taking care of texts, then shutting down the phone.

- **Performance**

Performance is taking action, while being in a specific form. Performance is where flow lives. It is understanding flow as a rhythm or wave, with a warm-up, peak, and cool down. If all the other conditions are set, focusing on the performance is the invitation to experience flow.

- **Awareness of factors that inhibit flow**

Multitasking, distractions, conditional motivation, challenges that are too difficult or too easy, nervousness, too much pressure, and a fixed-mindset are some of the most common factors that block states of flow.

Why

A. Increases your coaching radar screen.

Being aware of the conditions required for flow gives you the opportunity to ask your client more pointed and useful questions.

B. Focus on Intrinsic Motivation.

A big part of the benefit of finding flow is the orientation away from the final goal and toward the present moment of joy in taking the action. The point of flow is designing a life filled with joy to accomplish meaningful work.

C. Supports Well-Designed Actions.

Part of the design of flow is the focus on the present moment and what your client can completely control. The design of flow fits perfectly with creating well-designed actions.

How

- 1. Use the Flow Chart to help your client create a visual to foster more flow in your client's life.**

- 2. Identify a topic your client wants to address.**

Ask your client when they are experiencing each area of the flow chart, starting with where your client thinks they are at the present moment. For example, a client might want to address being more productive in the two hours after exercising. You then ask your client to identify which of the squares in the Flow Chart feel like they fit best right now.

- 3. Listen to your client.**

Ask your client to describe what other areas on the flow chart would feel like. You could ask questions such as, “What is the difference between middle flow and high flow?” “What would move the skill level needed down?”

- 4. Keep getting curious.**

The chart gives you ample avenues to explore and help lead your client to insights.

- 5. Recognize opportunities of actions to take in order to increase flow.**

Start with a larger goal or outcome, then work with your client backward from that goal to identify bite-sized [one-sitting-sized] pieces of action.

6. Focus on those one-sitting-sized actions.

Explore and ask questions about the conditions of flow: the setting, challenge level, skill level required, and focus.

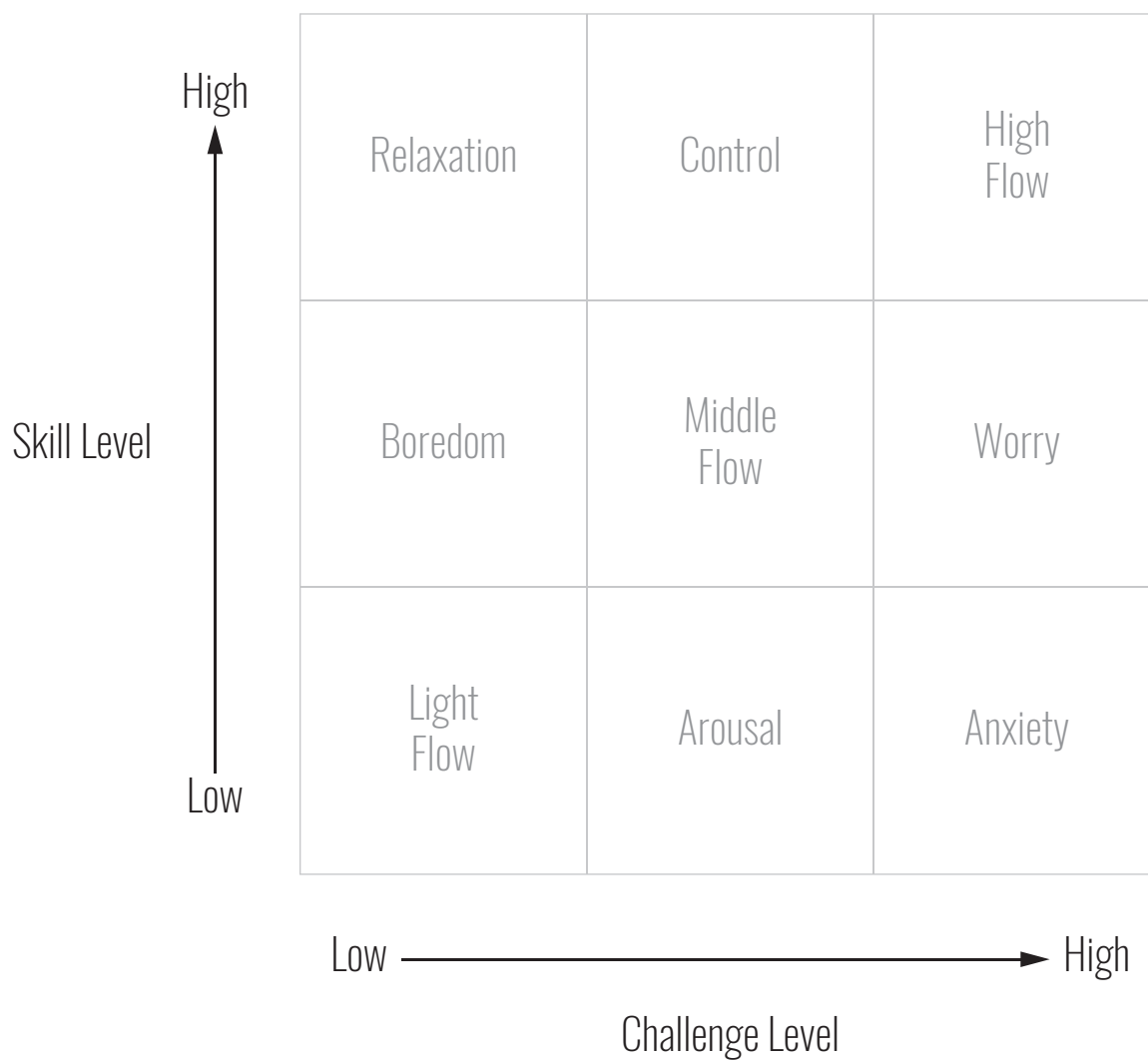
7. Follow your client through the conditions while also listening for coaching concepts such as values, perspectives, and mindsets.

Ask powerful questions that combine curiosity about the conditions of flow, as well as other coaching concepts, eventually creating an action plan with your client.

Examples of Questions for Flow:

- “What kinds of things do you say to yourself when approaching a challenge?” (A question that combines the flow condition *challenge* with a curious question, giving clues about *mindset*.)
- “What version of yourself is able to best focus?” (A question about *being*, as well as the flow condition *focus*.)
- “What inspires your creativity?” (A question about *creativity* that could also point toward a client’s *values*.)

Flow Chart



9: Assumptions

Chapter Overview

Our thoughts have a huge impact on our actions. The ability to change perspectives while being aware of assumptions is one of the most important skills clients can learn.

No matter what kinds of actions a client tries to take, if the assumption is dismal and negative, the action is most likely doomed to fail. This section looks at useful ways a coach can address assumptions and beliefs in a coaching session.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Empathetic, Empowering, Curious, Courageous, Confident

Skill-Check Questions

How will I recognize when my client expresses an idea that contains a limiting belief?

How will I help my client see a different way forward?

What are useful points to keep in mind when using the Assumption Chart?

What's the relationship between assumption and action?

Assumptions, Beliefs, and Perspectives

Being proven wrong is extremely stressful. People will often go to great lengths to avoid being proven wrong. In addition, most clients aren't even aware of how easy it is to shift to a different perspective, much less what a perspective is. Even fewer understand how to use assumptions and perspectives to their advantage.

Often the difference between an assumption, a belief, and a perspective can get muddy, but for the sake of the exercises (as well as to keep things clear in your mind), I make the following distinctions among the three concepts.

- An assumption is what a client thinks about something that hasn't ever been tested. Assumptions are picked up from other people or deduced from past experience.
- A belief, especially a limiting belief, is an idea that has been accepted as being true.
- A perspective is a bundle of beliefs that includes an emotion and acts as a lens, affecting how information and experiences are interpreted.

The curriculum introduces these exercises in the order of assumptions, beliefs, then perspectives, as a crescendo in difficulty. This progression also works to give clients an understanding of the mechanics of assumptions to beliefs to action to evidence.

Assumption Chart & Busting Limiting Beliefs

What

An assumption is an idea believed to be true without being tested. A belief is an idea that has been accepted as true, usually with some evidence (or at least the semblance of evidence). Making distinctions and being exact is useful in the context of life coaching sessions, but for the purposes of this section, assumptions and beliefs will be treated as the same since the same procedure applies for busting both.

Assumptions and beliefs can either be useful or limiting, and life coaching is particularly effective at ferreting out a client's negative assumptions and limiting beliefs in order to replace them with assumptions and beliefs that can be used to move them forward. Replacing a negative assumption or busting a limiting belief has three main parts:

- **Isolating the idea**

Identifying the essence of an idea is an important part of understanding the mechanics and system for replacing negative assumptions and busting limiting beliefs.

- **Finding the disconnect**

Perhaps at one point in time the idea would have been useful to the client, but in the current circumstances, the idea limits the client and acts as a drag on the client's forward movement. A limiting belief impedes the client's progress precisely because it no longer makes sense.

- **Busting the negative assumption or limiting belief**

Busting a negative assumption or limiting belief means directly addressing it and identifying new assumptions, beliefs, and actions to take the place of the outdated, negative ones.

Why

A. Confirms our beliefs.

Human nature wants assumptions to be proven true, even if the assumption goes against what a person really wants. Why? Because it is extremely stressful to be inaccurate in our beliefs about ourselves and the world. A client's assumptions give rise to a perspective, which, when combined with action, has a strong influence on the final outcome. That outcome is usually taken as evidence to support the client's original assumption. One can say it's similar in concept to a self-fulfilling prophecy.

B. Gets to the root of the problem.

The Assumption Chart helps the client get unstuck. It stops them from spending energy that is working against themselves. It works because it gets to the root of the problem: the assumptions that clients make about who they are as a person, an area of their life, or a task they are trying to accomplish. Assumptions quickly lead to perspectives, which influence the action taken. Those three—assumptions, perspectives, and action—determine the outcome, which becomes evidence to support the original assumption. It is why people with bad attitudes tend to have bad things happen and get bad results. Fortunately, the reverse is true for people who cultivate a positive perspective.

C. Increases awareness.

Life coaching excels at helping clients become aware of outdated assumptions and beliefs. More often than not, simply becoming aware of such assumptions and beliefs helps clients discard them. This exercise helps clients see how negative assumptions and limiting beliefs are affecting them negatively and making it harder to achieve what they want.

D. Promotes idea upgrade.

Busting an outdated assumption or limiting belief is like getting a software update. It can activate the newest, most efficient version of the client. Clients have the opportunity to choose those beliefs that really work and discard those that do not. It empowers clients to see that they can change to a more positive and effective way of thinking if they choose to do so.

E. Counter examples always exist.

There are always examples, even the smallest examples, that run counter to a client's outdated assumptions and limiting beliefs. Coaching helps clients see that holding onto outdated assumptions and limiting beliefs actually alters their perception—to the point that their outdated mindset negates actual, contrary evidence. Identifying counter examples is an effective way to help clients realize the power of assumptions and beliefs.

How: The Assumption Chart

1. Explain to your client what an assumption is, and the relationship between assumptions and evidence.

- **Assumption:** to take an unproven thought and act as if it is true, or to take it for granted.
- **Process:** an assumption quickly leads to a perspective, which has an impact on action.
- **Evidence:** action based on an assumption directly leads to results, which become evidence and almost always reinforce the original assumption.

2. Using an area in your client's life that may or may not be going so well, ask them about some of the original assumptions they have made—or perhaps an assumption of what it would be like to bring up a difficult topic with a loved one.

Sometimes assumptions get mixed together with limiting beliefs. It is completely okay if that happens. For the sake of these exercises, assumptions and limiting beliefs may be considered synonymous. However, once your client understands the difference between assumptions and beliefs, it helps them avoid negative assumptions even before they become entrenched as limiting beliefs.

3. Isolate one assumption.

It is typically something like, “Talking to this person about this topic is impossible.” Write the assumption in the top left box.

4. Explore what perspectives arise out of that assumption, and write them in the square in the bottom left area of the chart below.

5. Next, explore what kinds of actions are most likely to be taken from that perspective.

Write these actions in the bottom right area of the chart.

6. Determine what kind of results will most likely occur from the action, which quickly becomes the evidence that reinforces the assumption.

7. This exercise can bring up a lot of great insights and material to use as a basis for coaching.

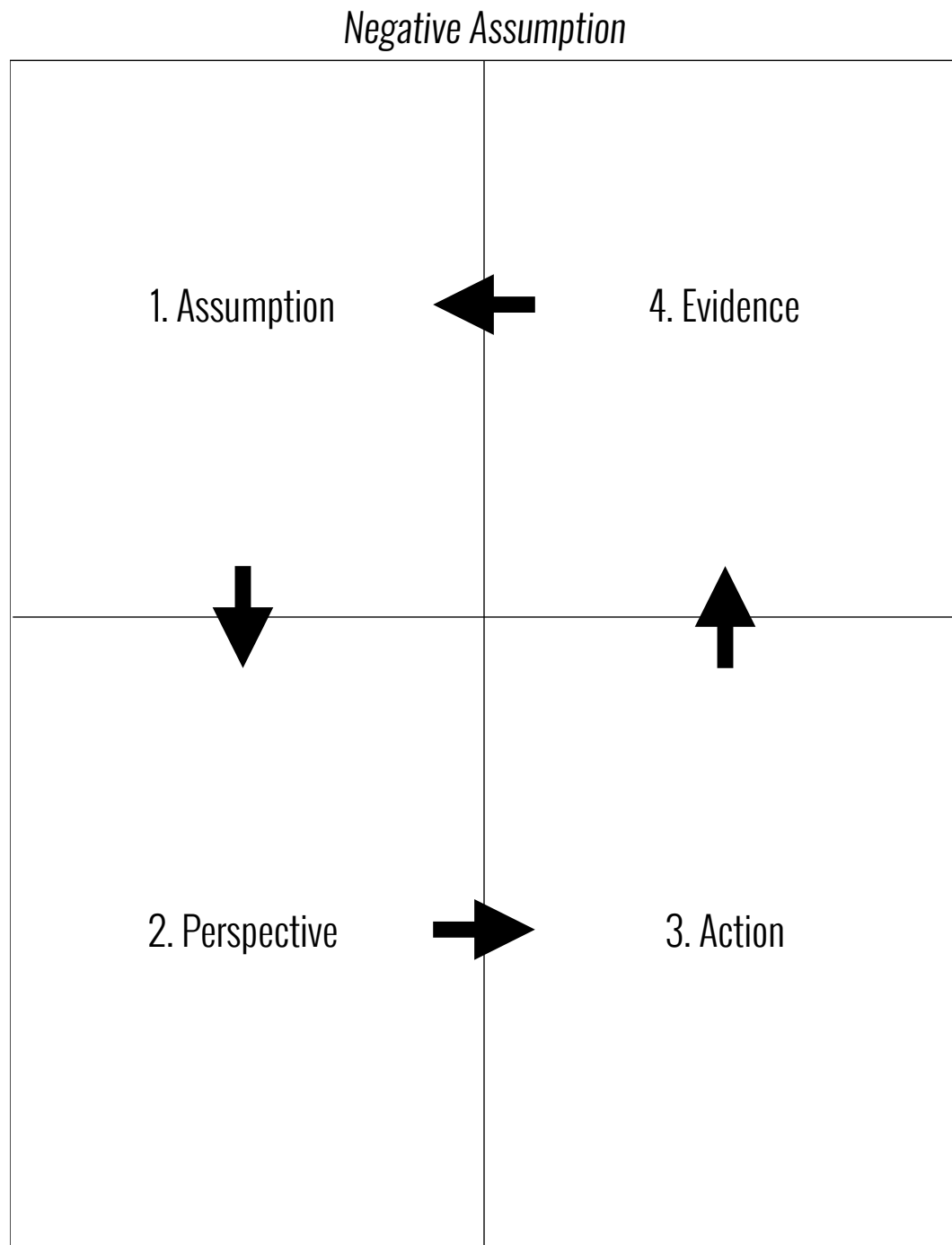
Coach away!

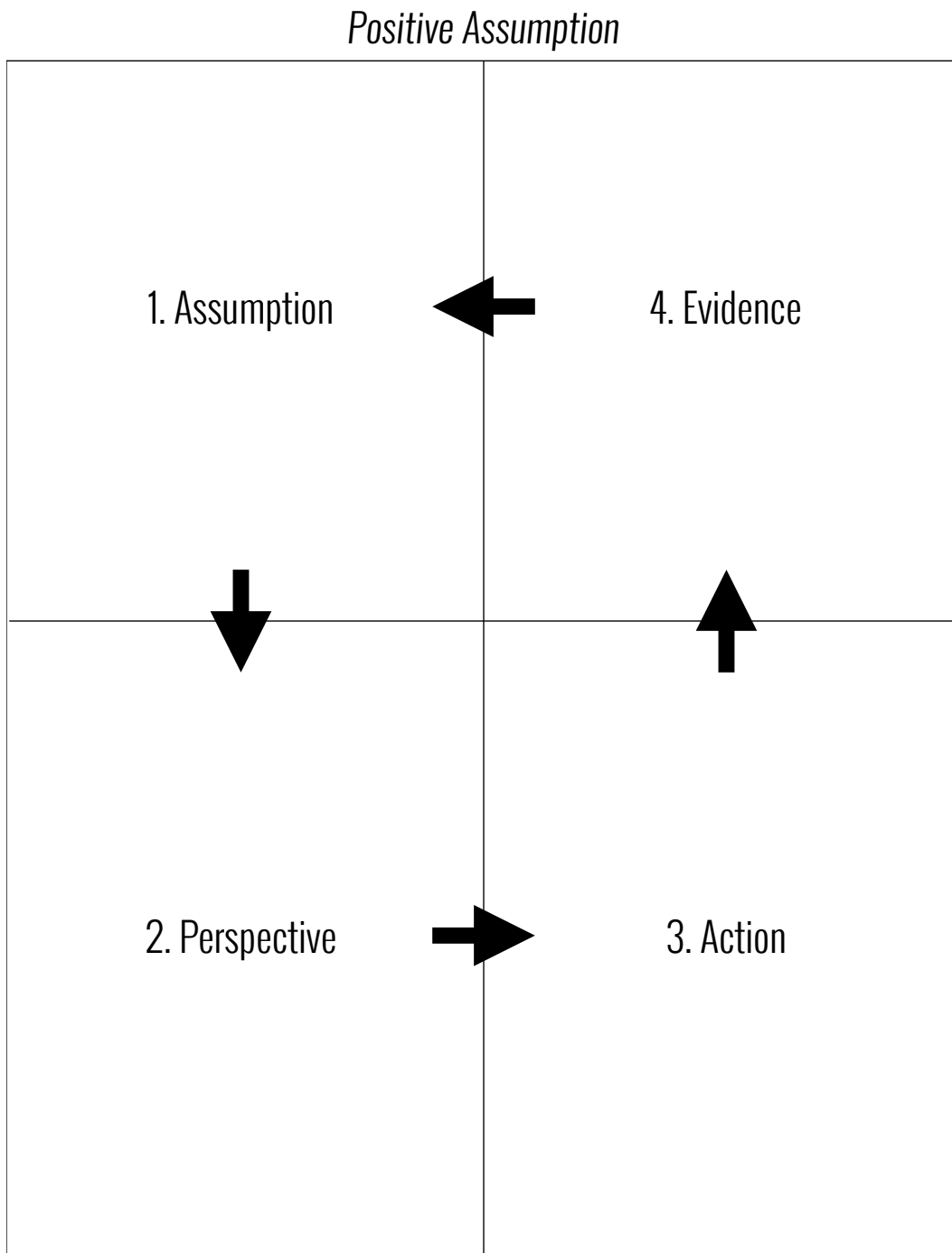
8. Repeat the process using the Assumption Chart with a positive assumption, starting with the assumption, then going counter-clockwise through the Assumption Chart.

9. Have your client compare the two charts, and coach through these questions: How will your client know which chart they are in? What can your client do as a reminder to act from the positive assumption?

10. Any other coaching questions that compare the two states of being are great to use!

11. Create coaching homework about staying in the realm of the positive Assumption Chart for the next two weeks to see what happens.





How: Busting Limiting Beliefs

The key to making the *Busting Limiting Beliefs* exercise work is to find the counter examples, those little examples that fly in the face of limiting beliefs. Even a small example can create a crack in the previous limiting belief and offer a small gap for another belief to take its place. Look for those small cracks.

It is also important to be mindful of nominalization, the process of turning an action into a noun. The *Busting Limiting Beliefs* exercise is designed to reverse this process and help clients realize that the results they are getting are based on the beliefs and the system they are using, NOT on their innate self-worth or talent.

Coach through the insights and "aha!" moments this exercise generates for your client. Jump to other exercises, such as creating a system or a structure, to lock in your client's learning. Soon their new belief becomes a perspective, and perspectives are extremely habitual.

- 1. Explore a few areas in your client's life that are not going well, or places where they aren't getting their desired results.**
- 2. Pick one area to start the process.**
- 3. Help your client with brainstorming a list of beliefs about themselves about the topic.**

Feel free to participate fully in the brainstorming, suggesting possible ideas that your client may or may not have to help the process along. Intuition is powerful, and brainstorming often leads to great insights.

- 4. Circle the helpful beliefs.**

Cross out the limiting beliefs with a single line so they can still be read.

- 5. Next to the crossed-out limiting belief, write the opposite belief.**

It is important to have fun with this next step. Encourage your client to suspend judgment and go with the process.

- 6. Ask your client, "In what ways is the new, empowering belief true?"**

The key here is to look for the counter examples in your client's life: when the empowering belief is true, even if it is just a small example, or even if it is true in a small way. This step is crucial to the success of the exercise. This is where your coaching skills really come into play.

- 7. After you have identified several areas in which the new, empowered belief could possibly be true, take it to the next level by asking your client, “What action would you take if you fully accepted the new, empowering belief as true?”**

Write out the actions in the lower right of the exercise diagram.

- 8. Create accountability for the new, empowering belief, and give your client some coaching homework to act on this new belief.**

10: Perspectives

Chapter Overview

Perspectives is a coaching exercise that allows clients to untangle the enmeshment of a limiting perspective that has derailed useful action. This section builds on the previous Assumptions exercise to provide another exercise that offers a step-by-step analysis designed to provoke insight. Perspectives are an omnipresent aspect of life that have an effect on happiness and effectiveness. Clarifying perspectives for a client can lead to life-changing insights and breakthroughs when clients start taking consistent actions from empowering perspectives. Even a subtle shift in perspective can make a huge difference in results.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Empathetic, Empowering, Curious, Courageous, Confident

Skill-Check Questions

Why is the Perspectives exercise so effective?

What are the most important steps in the Perspectives exercise?

How will I help a client identify and explore their default perspective?

How will I help my client clarify an empowering perspective?

Perspectives

Most people have heard about the importance of having a positive attitude. Indeed, like goals and organization, having a positive attitude is a great asset, but it's overused, and most people don't have a system to consciously access it. Clients slip into and out of a myriad of perspectives throughout the day depending on the circumstances they encounter, but they also draw on a handful of default perspectives to make sense of themselves and the world. It is important for a coach and a client to first identify the client's default perspectives. From there, the coach and the client can work together to create and shift to empowering perspectives that engage with reality in a meaningful way, and lead to effective action.

The *Assumption Chart* and the *Busting Limiting Beliefs* exercises have helped your client shift thoughts on a few topics. Now it's time for your client to take a huge leap and begin to create a few powerful perspectives into which they can slip at any point in life to consistently drive positive, effective action. The *Signature Perspective* exercise gives clients the tools to directly address their attitudes and assess the root cause of being stuck or ineffective. Perspective is the filter through which they are making meaning out of their experience and perception.

What

- **Beliefs and attitudes**

A perspective is a set of beliefs and attitudes through which something is perceived. It influences perception and the action taken. It has both a mental structure and a typical emotional association. From a life coaching point of view, being able to identify the usual way a client sees themselves, as well as the situation, is essential for increasing self-awareness and taking more effective action.

- **A filter**

A perspective also serves as a filter through which a client sees reality. It often causes them to ignore or exaggerate things that do not fit within their perspective, make generalizations based on experience, and apply these generalizations to other experiences.

- **A lens**

Whereas assumptions and beliefs usually focus only on one part of a client's life, a perspective extends to and affects all areas of life. A perspective is a bundle of beliefs that acts as a lens to interpret information, prompt assumptions and beliefs, and drive decisions to take action. Perspectives are incredibly powerful, and much of their power comes from how quickly they become habitual.

- **A default perspective**

A default perspective is a client's "go to" perspective on life, particularly their usual perspective when faced with a challenge, new ideas, something out of their comfort zone, or resistance.

- **An empowered, signature perspective**

This is the perspective that will serve us well in order to achieve our goals. We want this perspective to be our "signature" so that our thoughts can positively influence our actions and outcomes.

Why

A. Having a certain perspective is a large part of the human experience.

Perspectives are incredibly useful to clients because they affect a client's perception of reality. It is impossible for people to see reality objectively without the filter of perspectives.

B. Since perspective shapes how a client perceives reality, its influence is undeniable.

If the client has the perspective that they are an underperforming employee, and then they adopt a negative attitude, it is much harder to perform well and receive a positive performance review from their manager. On the other hand, if that same client is able to shift their perspective to realize that they have the tools needed to be a strong performer, and they can adopt an eager or even positive attitude, the client is able to take much more effective action and get better results.

C. Coach-client relationship creates perspective awareness.

The coach-client relationship is an outstanding tool for helping clients become aware of their default perspectives, as well as helping them adopt more useful perspectives.

How

1. Start with a particular focus and identify one topic.

As with the *Assumption Chart* to bust limiting beliefs, this exercise begins with a particular topic. The topic can be something that's currently challenging for your client, or something that's easy. I've found it works well to refer back to the *Wheel of Life*, and ask your client to pick a wedge for the topic.

2. Generate different perspectives.

Sometimes it's a challenge for clients to think of different perspectives. You may have to offer a few to get the ball rolling.

3. As you generate different perspectives, take a little time to explore them.

Is there a default perspective that comes up? Is the default perspective useful for the client to achieve their goals? How would your client approach the topic differently from this perspective? Try out a different topic to see how it applies, and what effect each perspective has on each topic.

4. Ask your client to identify one or two perspectives that they would like to use in their lives.

Usually one or two perspectives seem like the obvious choice. If two are outstanding, combine them. This will become your client's most empowering; their signature perspective.

5. Create an unusual name for the signature perspective to make it easier for your client to remember.

It's also helpful to design a system and structure for your client to use the new signature perspective. These names can be a combination of adjectives in an unusual word order, or an object that serves as a metaphor for the perspective.

6. Explore what action is possible from this signature perspective.

You can easily pivot to action steps by asking what action naturally wants to come out of using the perspective. You can also ask what action steps would test the strength of your client's ability to stay in the perspective even in the face of setbacks or challenges. Enjoy the energy of the exercise. It's high energy and positive; clients will come out of this session glowing.

Perspectives



11: Values & Passion

Chapter Overview

Exploring values and passion adds layers of depth to goals, strategic outcomes, and vision. Often, even the pursuit of clarifying values and exploring passion provides life-changing insights for clients.

This section looks at a few coaching exercises designed to explore the intersection of values and passion with action steps and a clarified mission statement.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Empathetic, Empowering, Curious, Courageous, Inspiring

Skill-Check Questions

What is the difference between a topic value and a process value?

How do values and passion relate to decision points?

Etymology

*Often referred to in graduation speeches, and either lauded or regarded as overrated by business gurus, passion typically refers to our much-loved pursuits, internal drives, and lifelong desires. And while this definition is useful, looking at the etymology of the word adds a layer of depth. The word "passion" comes from the Latin word *patior*, which means to suffer. In the hands of a skilled coach, passion is something that your client is willing to pursue even in the face of suffering. Why? Because the whole process—the successes, the failures, the learning, the journey—is worth it.*

Clarifying Values

What

Values are unique to each individual, calling out what is most important. A person can share values with other people, but a complete list of values is like a fingerprint. By contrast, morals are customs and beliefs about what is right and wrong, usually held by society as a whole. Ethics involve conformity with a code of conduct that is usually narrowed by a particular field or profession. Each society has its own moral code, and each profession has its own ethical guidelines.

For life coaching purposes, values have the following main components:

- **Worth**

A value is something that the client holds to be important and have worth. If something is worth it, people are willing to give or relinquish something for the sake of it. For example, if exercise is a top value for a client, they are willing to give up an extra hour of sleep in the morning. If spending time with family is a value, people are willing to focus on family and spend less time with friends. Values inherently imply a sense of worth and sacrifice.

- **Topic Value vs. Process Value**

From a life coaching perspective, the two kinds of values are topic (the general subject of the value) and process (a quality of the actual experience). “Family” would be a topic value. Identifying “family” as a value is a good start, but it would not qualify to be a process value. “Spending time together as a family” gets closer to a process value. “That moment when family is together and everyone smiles and laughs at the same time” is a good example of a process value. The more specific and clear you can be as a coach on both topic and process values, the more useful and powerful your sessions will be in your client’s life.

- **A name**

Using too many words when naming values can be more cumbersome and less useful than values with short, unique names. Using the example above, the “moment when everyone laughs at the same time” could be termed “Laughter Shared.” Creating a unique name gives a value more meaning and versatility for the client. For example, the client with the value “Laughter Shared” may also find ways to apply it at work with colleagues.

- **Inspires action**

Once a value is clear and has a name, the last criterion is that a value inspires and informs action in the client’s life.

Why

A. Serves as a guide for making decisions and well-designed actions.

Values are an effective guide to creating well-designed actions. Indeed, values act like a compass and a map directing a client toward the path ahead. They form the foundation for creating a compelling vision.

B. Provides the basis of fulfillment.

Having clearly defined values—and taking action to honor those values—is the foundation of a fulfilled life. Living a life aligned with values does not always mean that a client’s life will be easy, but it does mean that your client will understand the importance of aligning actions with values. Even when action is difficult to take, if it is in alignment with a client’s top values, the client is avoiding inner conflict.

C. Drives a sense of purpose.

Having a defined and ordered list of the client’s top values gives life a structured sense of purpose. Of course, values can and do change, but having a clear list gives a clear sense of completeness and purpose that can simplify and enrich life.

How

1. Introduce the idea of values and the importance of finding the set of values that is unique to your client.

Explain that taking action based on values is a way to achieve a more fulfilled and meaningful life. This work adds further structure and gives your client another tool for making decisions wisely.

2. Explore different areas of your client's life in an effort to determine what is most important.

I often ask questions like:

- When you were at your best, what were you doing?
- Think back to a peak experience. What did you do to make it happen?
- What do you really *dislike*? (In others or in a particular task? The opposite of what you dislike can elicit a value.)
- If someone really knew you, what would they know about you?
- What is the *most* important thing to you? What specifically is important about it?
- If you could only take one thing with you on a trip, what would you take? Why?
- Who is a person you admire? What do you admire about that person?
- What gives you strength?

3. Help your client brainstorm fun names for their values.

If your client can name a value—and the name is a little weird—your client has a much better chance of remembering that value and using it to inform their thinking.

4. Ask the client to further describe each value.

This is where your coaching skills become crucial. The more detailed and meaningful the value, the more powerful it will be.

- 5. Once you have a list, order the list in terms of what is most important to your client.**

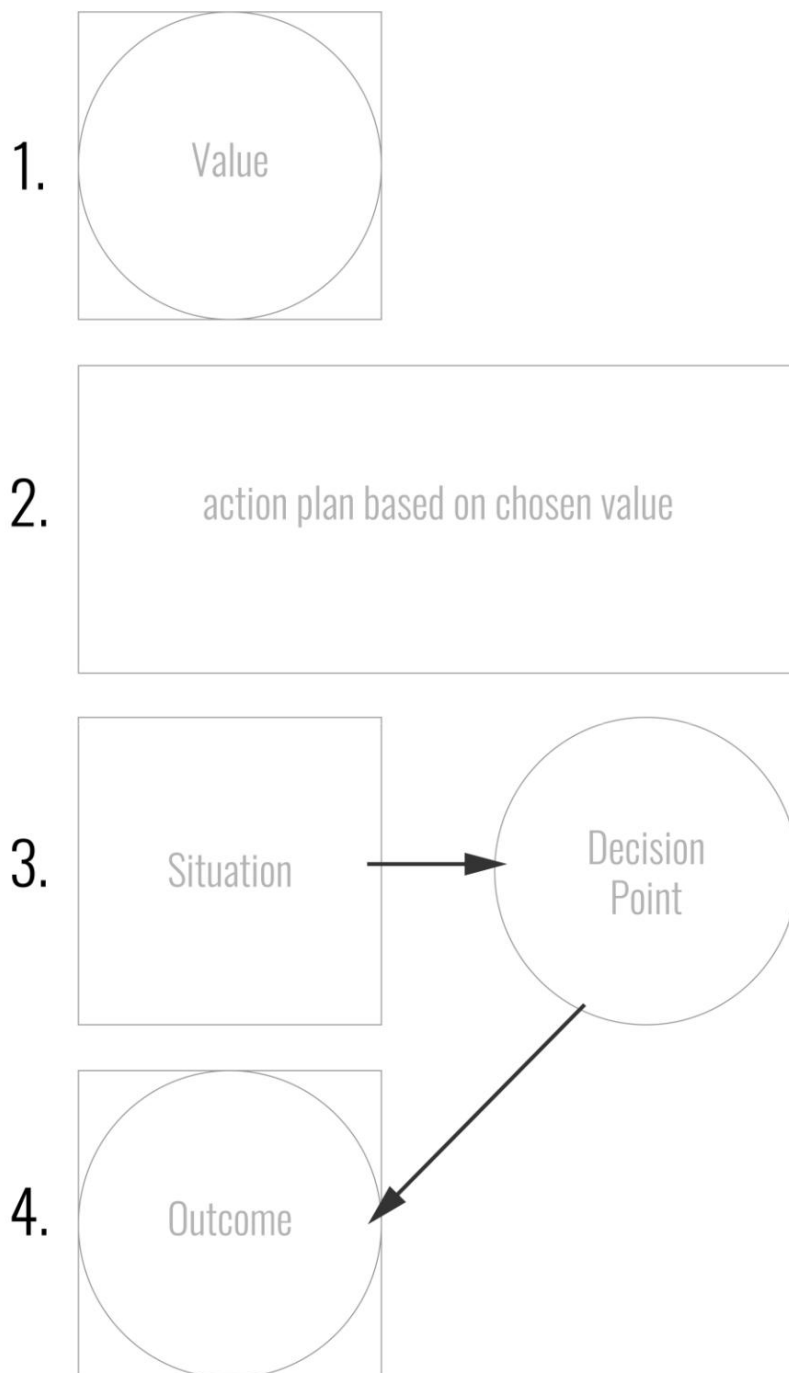
Ordering can be a challenge, but it can really test the importance of each value.

- 6. Work with your client to design where they want to be with their stress level, what actions they want to design, what they want to become more aware of in their stress level and response, and what they want to focus on for next week.**

- 7. If a concrete accountability comes out of the coaching, great.**

If not, that is okay. The other exercises in the session lend themselves more to creating great coaching homework.

Values



Identifying Your Passions

Similar to the distinction between a topic value and a process value, the initial exploration of an interest can uncover your deeper passions. When you have found something your client cares about so much that they will take bold action and even recover from mistakes, you've found passion. Align that passion with a need in the community, and you've got the path to develop a leader. This exercise attempts to ground clients in an awareness of passion, while the following concepts in the coaching sessions look to nurture that passion with action steps. It is not just about exploring what your client loves to do, but helping them understand why they love doing it.

What

- **Clarify passions by exploring interests**

Exploring different areas sparks awareness of your client's interests and passions.

- **Make a distinction between a topic and a process**

Exactly like the difference between a topic value and a process value, you can also distinguish between passions. Practically speaking, not much separates a value from a passion other than the intensity of pursuit. People tend to pursue passions more than values, but in function, the concepts are extremely similar.

- **Acknowledge that the pain is worth it**

Tapping into the etymology of passion as experiencing something painful, your goal is to help your client prepare for doing hard things, build resilience, and improve endurance to keep going when challenged.

Why

A. Relates to grit.

Grit is the ability to keep moving forward when the going gets tough. Recently, scholars and educators have lauded grit as perhaps the single most important skill that leads to

success. Helping clients identify something worth fighting for helps them build grit. Having a clearly-defined passion prepares people mentally to expect, and even welcome, obstacles.

B. Promotes action.

Doing the work to clearly understand a passion makes it easier to identify which action to pursue. People like what they understand. Making a reason more understandable makes the required action more acceptable. Try it. The human mind is wired to encourage Flow, and a big part of Flow is playing in the area between complete understanding and slight confusion. Making the slightly confusing understandable is another definition of learning. Crafting a slightly vague interest into a crystal-clear passion mimics the brain's circuitry of learning and Flow. Amazing actions and results happen when engaged in Flow.

How

1. Introduce the idea of passion as something worth doing even when things get hard.

This exercise is straightforward. The coaching focuses on being curious about *what exactly is it about what the client loves to do that makes them love it so much.*

2. Become curious about what your client loves to do and why.

3. A favorite question is: “Are you interested in anything that is considered odd or unusual?”

This question often elicits great clues to passions. Sometimes there is nothing there, but if there is, then it's usually a great place to explore. Other suggested questions:

- What do you love to do? Why do you love doing it?
- What activities give you purpose?
- If you had a month completely free of obligations, what would you pursue?
- What would you pursue if you were guaranteed to succeed?

Precise Mission Statements

What

By using the lens of a specific project, the *Mission Statement* exercise provides a natural limit or boundary for the mission statement. Such a boundary is tremendously useful in removing pressure from the mission statement needing to be an over-arching, this-is-my-one-and-only-life-purpose sentence that captures every facet of my being. It adds precision to your client's immediate, strategic goals.

The mission statement is a concise sentence that identifies aspirations and is easy to reference throughout the day. It aligns action with intention. It guides decision-making. A simple, powerful mission statement has the power to influence major life decisions, helping clients determine the best action to take based on a larger vision. A mission statement has these three characteristics:

- **Short, sweet, and to the point**

Your mission is what you are sent to do. A mission statement is a short sentence, usually 10 words or less, that captures the purpose of the leadership practice. Short, sweet, and to the point, a mission statement speaks to both the action to be taken and the desired outcome to be achieved.

- **Inspiring**

Another quality of mission statements is the motivation they inspire. You know you have created an outstanding mission statement when it inspires you and others to take bold action.

- **Guide for action**

At its best, a mission statement guides decision making. A simple, powerful mission statement has the power to influence major life decisions, as well as help guide day-to-day business and/or personal decisions regarding which actions to take based on a larger vision.

Why

A. Powerfully communicates.

A strong mission statement helps others understand why your client is taking on the project. Such communication makes it easier for your client to express a vision quickly, which is an important element of being an effective leader.

B. Provides focus.

A strong mission statement provides focus for your client. Especially in a world filled with distractions, having a clear, short-term mission statement can be extremely powerful in helping clients tone down the outside noise. The increased focus facilitates clients' more productive accomplishment of well-designed actions. Accomplished missions lead to a powerful cycle of an increased sense of accomplishment along with increased stamina and skill. This leads to better outcomes. The positive cycle of accomplishment and effort is set in motion, and a strong mission statement provides the focus for the process to continue.

C. Inspires motivation.

Mission statements add a level of importance and fun to projects, which helps clients tap into intrinsic and proactive motivation.

How

1. Start with identifying your client's passion using the concepts from the previous section in this chapter.

Use the mission statement diagram, and have your client write out their passion on one side.

2. Explore the need your client sees in the world.

What is needed in the community? What is life asking of you right now?

3. Have your client explore the intersection between the passion and the need.

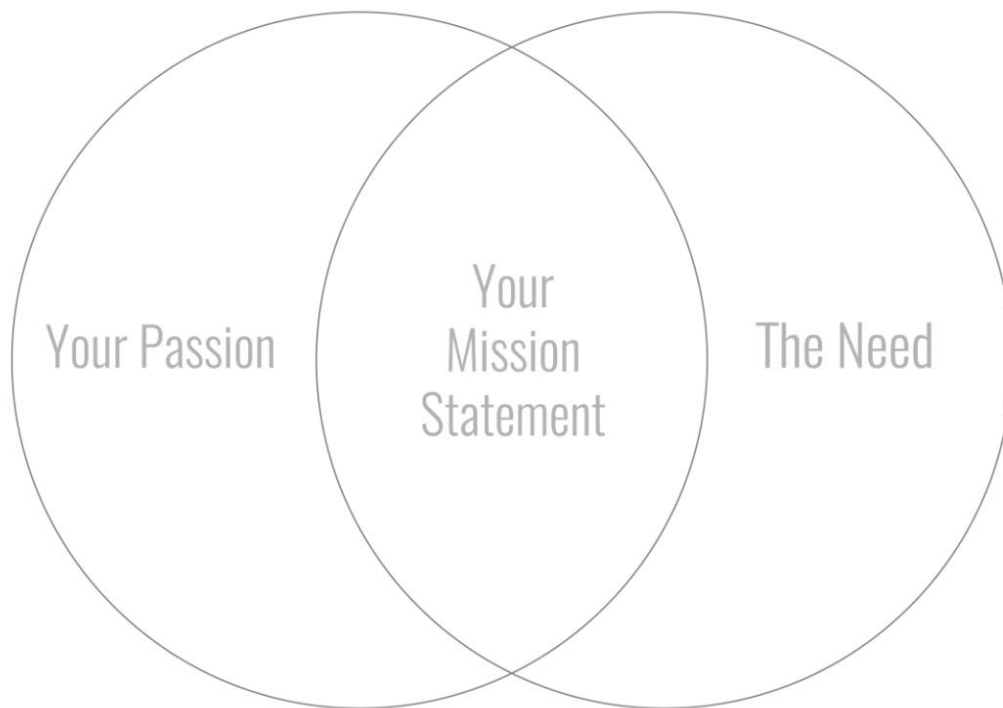
Have them write this in the middle of your client's mission statement diagram.

4. Give your clients some coaching homework.

For instance, they can bring their mission statement to mind one or more times a day.

5. Push your client to take action steps based on the mission statement that could evolve into leadership practice.

Mission Statement



12: Systems & Habits

Chapter Overview

This chapter dives into Systems thinking to help clients understand the power and use of creating structures and habits that lead to desired outcomes. It also zeroes in on key decision points within a system that act as leverage points for making the system run smoothly. It concludes with looking at best practices in addressing nutrition and habits as a life coach.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Empathetic, Empowering, Curious, Courageous, Confident

Skill-Check Questions

How can I use Systems thinking as a coach?

What is the value of a decision point?

How can clients use Systems thinking to gain empowering perspectives on results?

What are best practices for a life coach to address food choice and nutrition with a client?

What are the essential elements of a habit?

Systems

The *Systems* exercise is designed to help clients to be proactive, work differently, and be more effective. A system is a well-planned process consisting of a collection of objects and actions that function as a whole. This exercise is crucially important because it helps clients understand that their outcomes (e.g. current finances, current job, current health, current social media marketing knowledge, etc.) are not a reflection of their intelligence or innate self-worth. Rather, those outcomes are merely a reflection of their current systems and ingrained habits. The keys to systems are:

- **Looking at the world from a systems point of view helps clients avoid putting things off or procrastinating,** which always prevents them from taking important action steps.
- **Clients are NOT their results.** Instead, their results are a reflection of the system they are using. If they change their system, then they change their results.
- **Systems are an integration of action, materials, and time.** The more specific a system is regarding *when* something takes place, *what* the needed materials are, and *what* action will take place, the stronger the system will be.
- **Identifying the points where a decision must be made.** In terms of systems, an example of a decision point may be after coming home from a networking event, you have a stack of business cards. Having an effective system in place will help you *decide* what to do with those cards.
- **A system will only be used if it makes the action easier and more effective than it was before.** Systems need to be simple and become stronger with use, not take more time or energy.
- **Effective systems often address the little details.** What little thing can you add to what's already here? What would make this more effective? Look for the details.

What

An effective system consists of:

- **An inventory of original resources**

Everything is a resource, from the plethora of papers you have on your desk at work, to the amount of time you have on your hands, and their level of energy. In a system, everything is considered a resource. In the example above, the client wants to create a system to efficiently put contact information from collected business cards into their computer database. Some of the resources include the collected business cards, a filing box to store them before they're entered into the computer, the computer database, a place to store the cards after they've been entered, and the amount of time that the client wants to allocate between time of card collection and entry into the computer.

- **Structures**

A structure is an object, or a designated space to put something, that directs the flow of a system and makes the whole system work (e.g. a new filing folder designed to streamline a project). Mental habits are also structures, such as always setting a reminder on a phone from a certain perspective. Such mixed tangible (phone reminders) and intangible (from a certain perspective) structures are extremely powerful and effective. For example, consider a client who creates a Well-Designed Action to place his card filing box next to where he routinely places his wallet when he gets home each day. The habit functions both as a tangible structure (the box) and a reminder to drop new cards into the “not yet contacted” part of the box.

- **Flow**

Flow is something that happens naturally. It is the energy of the system that moves it effortlessly in the direction the structures point. Without a structure of a filing box, new business cards from a conference tend to be stuffed in pockets. In this case, the natural flow would be from the pockets to a larger inbox (hopefully), but this will likely be lost under larger pieces of paper and forgotten for a week. With a structure of a filing box that sits next to the keys at home, the natural flow is to see the “Not Yet Contacted” section of business cards move to the “Contacted” section. There's now a structure

guiding the flow. String more structures together to guide a flow, and you've got a system.

- **A decision point**

A decision point is the intersection of structure and flow. For example, the key decision point in the system is the decision to put the new business cards in the “Not Yet Contacted” part of the box as soon as the client arrives home. If a client follows through with that choice, then the rest of the steps fall into place. Since that action is the hinge on which the system depends, it's essential to make that step as clear, simple, and easy as possible.

- **A desired outcome**

If the outcome matches what the client wants, and the system made it easier to achieve, great! If not, then the client should go back, adjust their structures, and see how they interact with the natural flow. In our example, the client's desired outcome is to have an easy routine of entering business cards into his computer database quickly, efficiently, and in an orderly manner. The client is getting their desired outcome at the moment, so they have created a successful system.

Why

A. Structures guide flow.

Systems work because structures make work easier by enabling a natural flow. For example, let's consider the simple Well-Designed Action of placing the business card box next to where the client will place his wallet when he gets home. Systems work because once the client sees the box, the natural flow is to place new business cards in the box. The key to making a system work is to create structures that guide flow easily and naturally.

B. Structures break down bigger tasks into smaller tasks.

Systems work because they naturally break down bigger tasks into smaller tasks. In the business card example, the overall task is broken down into a series of smaller, manageable steps. As a result, this not only creates a card-to-computer pipeline, it also

helps break down potentially bigger tasks, like reducing clutter and being able to quickly find a phone number.

C. Structures are not personal, so try new things.

Some of the magic of thinking in terms of a system is taking judgment out of the equation. So often, people attribute success or failure to a personal character quality, which puts people into a fixed mindset. The downside to a fixed mindset is the increased pressure to be immediately successful and to intensely try to avoid failure. It's nearly impossible to adopt a playful attitude when taking success or failure personally, and with a fixed mindset. Instead, thinking in terms of systems allows your client to experiment with new actions, putting new structures in place. If a system doesn't work, no big deal; try something else. Keep trying new things with the system until something clicks.

How

1. Introduce the concept to the client.

When introducing systems, an easy target is asking how messy or clean your client's living space is. Clothes, laundry, dirty dishes, and trash containers provide a quick visual check to see how dialed in your client's cleaning and organizing systems are.

2. Determine the outcome your client wants to achieve.

"Outcomes" are goals, just with a fancier name and a different mindset.

3. Help clients think in terms of systems.

Ask about the steps and processes your client uses in their existing systems, such as how they go about attempting to keep their living space tidy. Ask about resources that they have at their disposal.

4. Realize that a system is already in place, even if it's not working well.

It might be easier to build on what is working than to scrap the whole system. Other times, a fresh start is more effective. Your client's call. Outline the current system and look for the little details and things that are working.

5. Look at what's not working.

The tendency when looking at a messy living space, computer desktop, or to-do list is to start cleaning things up. Although your client may immediately feel better, cleaning up has not solved the real problem—and within a week or two (sometimes even sooner), the mess has returned. In the process of cleaning up, your client has taken away all the evidence and clues about what structures are needed to create a great system. Avoid the urge to immediately clean up and arrange, and instead approach the mess like a scientist looking for clues about what's not working, so that you can create a lasting structure that will yield sustainable and desired outcomes.

6. Explore the next two prompts—Decision Points and Structures—simultaneously.

The purpose of having Decision Points before Structures is to prompt clients to think in terms of time. Things take time to sort. Anything your client acquires will, at some point, demand time and attention to move and find a place. Accelerate the process of creating a system by exploring with your client the places where things are acquired (tangible things), the action (what needs to be done), and the time (when they have to do it).

7. Draw the map of the system, and include a visual representation of raw materials, time, decision points, structures, and desired outcomes.

This important and useful step helps clients lock in the learning about systems and move forward more quickly in creating new systems.

8. Identify the decision points, and create Well-Designed Actions.

Now it's time to shift into creating action steps to test the structure of the system.

Making Decisions

One of the main benefits of knowing one's values is applying that knowledge to make wise decisions in alignment with those values. This exercise aims to help clients apply their values to the decision making process. Using the previous exercise of *Systems*, pinpoint the actual time when your client is going to make a decision to follow through on a value or to ignore the value and make a different choice. Then, guide your client in using these newly-minted values as structural support. Assist them in bringing more of what they really want into their life.

What

- **Clarified value**

Start with the value that you created and clarified in the previous exercise.

- **Decision point**

This is the point before your client actually takes action in alignment with the value. For example, if the action is to work out in the morning, the actual decision point is probably the night before, when your client decides to set their clothes by the bedroom door.

Why

A. Combats over-optimism.

Many well-intended actions and values are torpedoed by over-optimism. Unrealistic thinking that says, "I can just wing it or get ready from scratch in the morning" usually leads either to frustration or to frantically hustling around to beat the clock (or sometimes a bit of both). Preparation is the key to being successful. By taking the extra step of identifying not just the value, but also the action to take, and the preparation required ahead of time, your client has more tools to follow through.

B. Promotes systems thinking.

The idea of identifying the preparation and the decision point ahead of time helps you and your client think in terms of systems. Developing systems is a powerful tool. When you tie systems with values, you help your client develop a positive, synergistic cycle.

How

1. **Transition from identifying values to identifying *when your client is going to use them to make decisions.***

Describe the process and look back to a system that you jointly designed to help your client achieve something in their life.

2. **Write down the area of focus.**
3. **Write a quick description of the system.**
4. **Identify the value most applicable to this area of focus.**
5. **Look at the specific point in time when your client will make a decision to honor the value, follow through, or make a different choice.**

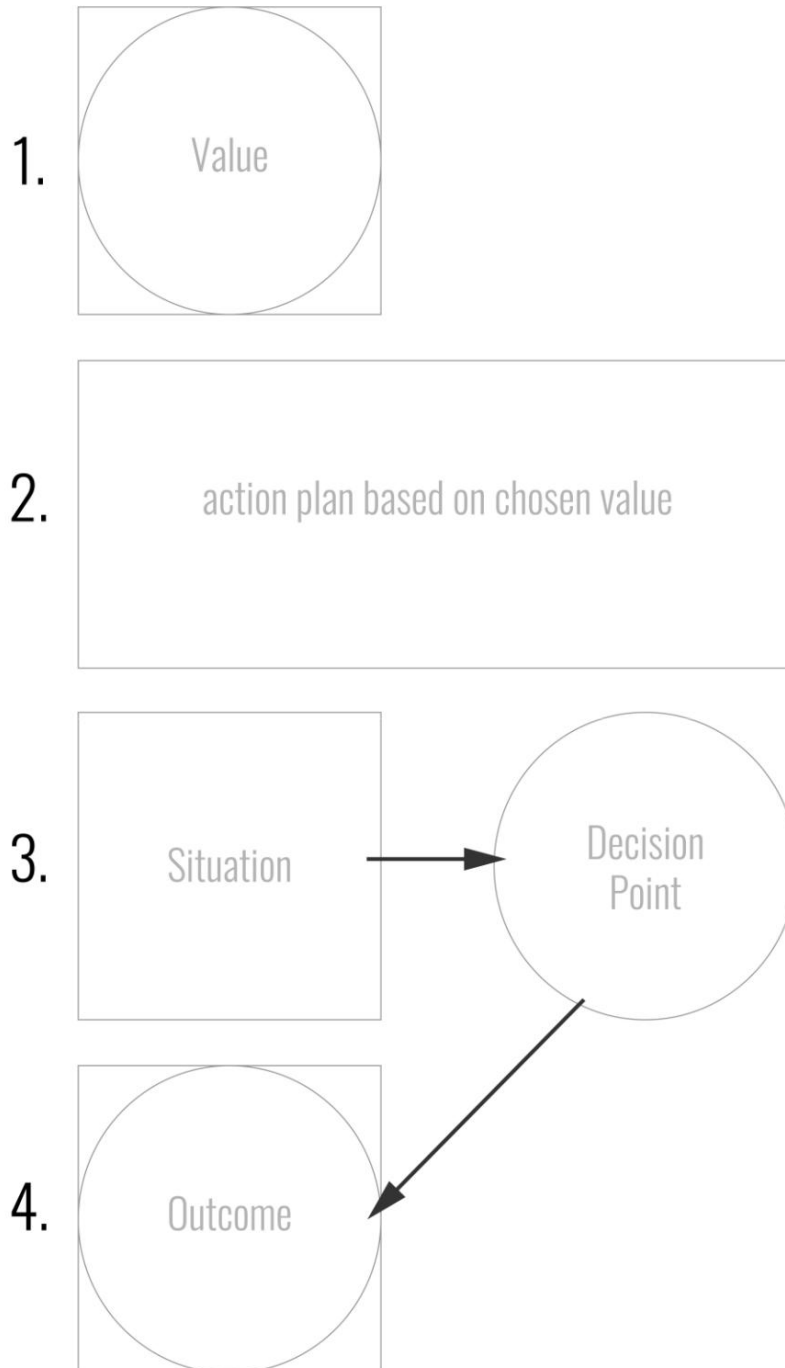
Make that decision point obvious.

6. **Create a new structure, or modify one that already exists, to help your client employ the value to make the choice.**

7. **Record any other insights the exercise brings up along the way.**

There's a prompt to record insights at the bottom of the diagram. You can also apply this exercise to other areas, to look for patterns in your client's life. Chances are, if they are doing this in one area of life, it is also happening in other areas. This exercise creates a rich coaching environment.

Values



Examples of Decision Points

- **Self-Care Value:** The point in the morning when I have to choose between hitting the snooze button or getting up for a morning jog. If I honor my Self-Care Value, I will get up and go for the jog, knowing that I am taking care of myself and setting myself up for a great day. If I ignore my Self-Care Value, I may have a few more moments of sleep, but I will feel guilty for the rest of the day, and may be a bit sluggish.
- **No Regrets Value:** The point when I decide whether to commit to hiring a web designer for my business web site, or not. The web designer is waiting for my reply, and before I answer him, I can either honor my No Regrets Value, or ignore it. Honoring it is asking myself if on my deathbed I will regret not investing in an awesome web site to promote the business of my dreams. Ignoring my No Regrets Value would mean saving the money, playing it safe, and working on the web site myself, knowing that it would probably never be as good without professional help.
- **A-ha Moment Value:** The point at work when I have an opportunity to talk to my boss to let him know that I would like more responsibilities, and that I have an interest in leadership in the workplace. I have a choice to either honor my A-ha Moment Value, which is going after opportunities where I know I can learn new things, or ignore my value and succumb to the fear of rejection or judgment from my boss.

Nutrition

Live to eat or eat to live? When it comes down to it, there might not be a huge distinction between which side your client chooses. However, the motivation that lies behind a client's food choices can open a world of possibilities when it comes to balance and nutrition.

Food and drink are a central part of our lives, and whole industries are built on growing, shipping, packaging, cooking, storing, selling, and finally planning what we eat and drink. To get started, let's take a quick peek at some of the common terms that show up in this chapter.

Diet vs. Nutrition

The word “diet” can be used in two ways and one meaning is often confused with the other. One common meaning is: “a short-term change in what you eat and drink for the purpose of weight-loss or some other health goal.” Another meaning is: “What you eat and drink regularly.” As a coach, it is important to have an open-ended exploration with both meanings of “diet.” A discussion can be facilitated by using language that focuses on the nutrition or dietary “model” the client is investigating. Ensuring you are on the same page as your client in using this term is essential.

Nutrition is the interaction between what you eat and drink as well as how your body processes it. A well-balanced way of eating may not be healthful if it's not properly broken down and utilized in the body. If your body is able to fully digest and store all the nutrients it needs based on your lifestyle, body and immune system, then you have “good” or proper nutrition. If your body is not able to store specific nutrients or is nutrient-deficient, you may have poor nutrition. Today's contemporary world presents several challenges. Most people don't always make healthful choices (due to time, media, knowledge and “trends” that aren't accurate).⁴⁸ The fast pace of society also prompts people to eat too quickly and not chew food well enough to make it easy to digest. Many factors come together from food choice, to the mental and emotional energy around food that have an impact on your client's overall nutrition. Food and nutrition can be complex. A wellness coach supports a client in becoming aware of how to make more informed decisions about their health. This is particularly important when empowering the client to choose how they would like to work with experts in the field of health and nutrition.

⁴⁸ Lowe, Michael R. et al. 2013. “Dieting and Restrained Eating as Prospective Predictors of Weight Gain.” *Frontiers in Psychology* 4: 577.

Two Principles of Nutrition

1. Balance

The idea of a balanced way of eating extends back to the ancient world and the idea of balancing the acidic vs. the alkaline, or the four humors in Hippocratic and Galen's theories of health. The contemporary theory on food choice focuses on finding an ideal balance between elements that provide a complete spectrum of nutrients. Balance is also the guiding idea behind addressing deficiencies of a missing nutrient with vitamins or supplements. Several eating plans also point to the ideal balance between "healthy" and "unhealthy foods" to be 90% healthy and 10% unhealthy, giving people a way to eat the foods that taste awesome every now and then. This way, people can find a sustainable, mostly healthy eating lifestyle. It's also more concrete than saying, "Everything in moderation." The intention behind the idea of moderation usually becomes "I can eat whatever I want as long as it's not too much," which is a challenge to monitor.

2. Avoid

On the other side of the spectrum, nearly all food plans also include foods to avoid.⁴⁹ From saturated fats to grains, different ways of eating target different foods in order to help the body heal in various ways. It is also clear from studying different food choices and speaking to various nutrition experts that our bodies go through cycles of healing.⁵⁰ This allows for people to re-introduce different foods once the body heals. The purpose

⁴⁹ For a variety of studies on foods to avoid, see the following resources:

- De Souza, Russell J et al. "Intake of Saturated and Trans Unsaturated Fatty Acids and Risk of All Cause Mortality, Cardiovascular Disease, and Type 2 Diabetes: Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Observational Studies." *The BMJ* 351 (2015): h3978.
- Yang Q, Zhang Z, Gregg EW, Flanders WD, Merritt R, Hu FB. Added Sugar Intake and Cardiovascular Diseases Mortality Among US Adults. *JAMA Intern Med.* 2014;174(4):516-524. doi:10.1001/jamainternmed.2013.13563
- Etemadi, Arash et al. "Mortality from Different Causes Associated with Meat, Heme Iron, Nitrates, and Nitrites in the NIH-AARP Diet and Health Study: Population Based Cohort Study." *The BMJ* 357 (2017): j1957.

⁵⁰ For a variety of research on nutrition and healing, see the following resources:

- Arnold M, Barbul A. (2006). Nutrition and wound healing. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 117(7 Suppl):42S-58S
- Didari, Tina et al. "Effectiveness of Probiotics in Irritable Bowel Syndrome: Updated Systematic Review with Meta-Analysis." *World Journal of Gastroenterology: WJG* 21.10 (2015): 3072-3084.
- Knekt P, Kumpulainen J, Järvinen R., Rissanen H., Heliövaara M., Reunanen A., Hakulinen T., Aromaa A. Flavonoid intake and risk of chronic diseases. *Am. J. Clin. Nutr.* 2002; 76:560-568.

of avoiding certain foods is to help the body regain balance, although sometimes avoiding certain foods becomes a permanent lifestyle for health or moral reasons. Wellness coaches take the idea of avoiding certain foods further by focusing on what the client is learning about their bodies and their decision-making. This focus helps further the empowerment of the client's decisions as they develop a stronger growth mindset when it comes to their nutrition.

Coaching to Flourish Model with Nutrition

What

- **Goals or Desired Outcomes [Flower]**

Start by identifying the eventual place your client wants to be. From feeling more energized to getting more fit, it is helpful to identify your client's reason or reasons for wanting to change elements of their lifestyle.

- **Starting Point [Seed + Roots]**

When looking at nutrition, you can help your client move toward their goal or desired outcome by creating awareness around your client's current nutrition habits. Tools that help raise awareness include completing an assessment wheel with a focus on food choice and lifestyle, filling out a symptoms form, or keeping a food log for three or more days. Having your client write down or take pictures of everything they eat and drink will give you a useful place to start in order to see what your client's current conditions are. Just from looking at the tracking, your clients will want to adjust. It can also be helpful for clients to have their blood tested for different levels of nutrients and other health markers. Each client is responsible for finding their own nutrition plan. The coach's job is to help clients start doing the research and following through on the plan.

- **Well-Designed Structure [Leaves]**

After your client keeps a food log, fills out a symptoms form, meets with their chosen expert in the field, and receives any test results, your client will have received various ideas and recommendations for what they need to either increase or decrease in their diet. As a coach working in the flourish model, you help your client gather these resources partnering with them to design an external system and structure. Using the new structure, your client can continue to learn about their wellness, which will lead to more opportunities to experiment with future well-designed structures.

- **Stamina [Stem]**

Stamina focuses on the strengths your client needs to be resilient and keep on track. As a wellness coach, you can use your coaching tools to help your client identify perspectives, clarify values, and tap into intrinsic motivation. The coaching tools and exercises will help your client do the required inner work for lifestyle change.

- **Flourish [Flower]**

After your client has adopted a food choice change, the body eventually (and sometimes immediately) responds. Your client will feel better, which can spark an upward cycle of other life changes, such as increased exercise and more energy to devote to other areas. However, sometimes the client wants to slip back into old habits even when they DO feel better because that's what their mind and body is used to. This is where coaching is key to helping the client continue their positive changes! By helping them see even minor forward movement, slip ups become less and less as they inch forward to a new way of living, being, and feeling.

Why

A. Initial exploration matters.

Approaches to eating are such personal topics that exploring a client's perspectives and reasoning from a coaching perspective can have a positive impact on the goals a client chooses to pursue. The quality of the client's reasoning makes a difference in the long run and impacts whether or not they will follow through on a lifestyle change. By taking the time to explore goals, you can help your client also ensure that the lifestyle change is not just about the destination but also about learning from and experiencing the journey along the way.

B. Tracking helps make change happen.

Whatever change your client wants to make, measuring it is an excellent way to assess the current state and what needs to change in order to attain the desired outcome. Creating a food log for a period of days, charting energy levels, looking at what happens to mood depending on the variety of inputs a client consumes – such as caffeine – are all

helpful tools that give a client the self-awareness they need to make more informed and meaningful nutrition choices.

C. Food choice change is connected to other areas of life.

Making different choices in food can be a powerful agent of change in other areas of your client's life as well.⁵¹ Wellness coaching excels at helping clients create sustainable change by looking at how change in one area affects other areas of life. By making and experiencing changes in food choices and energy levels, a client becomes more empowered to make other powerful choices in their life.

D. Wellness coaching provides structure and accountability.

Using wellness coaching tools, especially paying attention to what a client is learning about themselves through the process, while being supported by the client's accountability they have designed with you, makes the difference on whether short-term changes in food choice become long-term lifestyle changes.

How

1. Usually clients come to wellness coaching with a desire to change their lifestyle and address their way of eating.

A useful place to start is to ask your client about the goals they have for their overall health, which may include: eating changes, overall health goals, energy levels, activity practices, etc. Dig deeper with your powerful questions to explore what the client wants to learn and how they could see themselves grow through the process.

2. Start with completing a symptoms survey and asking your client to keep a three-day food log.

The food log can be as simple as taking pictures of everything they eat over three days, or writing this information down in a journal. Your client will need to keep a food log when working with their chosen expert in the field; however, this food log can also be a

⁵¹ DelParigi, A. K Chen, A D Salbe, J O Hill, R Wing, E M Reiman and P A Tataranni. International Journal of Obesity (2007) 31, 440–448. doi:10.1038/sj.ijo.0803431; published online 4 July 2006

coaching tool to help the client make distinctions between their choices, symptoms and personal identity.

3. Coach your client through the Nutrition Wheel.

Used in the same way as the *Wheel of Life* or *Address the Stress Wheel*, (refer back to Assessment Wheels in Chapter 5) this wheel utilizes topics related to nutrition that are helpful for your client to consider:

- **Clarity of Current Food Plan.** How clear (or unclear) is your client on knowing which foods to include and to avoid for their specific food plan? What is their knowledge and awareness around their current food choices?
- **Meal Planning.** System for meal planning and prep, other resources.
- **Access to Comfort Food.** Availability to comfort or yummy foods, such as chicken soup, chocolate, or any other food that feels comforting and soul-nourishing.
- **Hydration.** Habits of drinking water throughout the day.
- **Energy.** Mental and physical energy based on your current choices.
- **Digestion & Health.** Current level of digestion and other symptoms (headaches, muscle aches, etc.) that give clues about diet.
- **Financial.** Cost of food choices or desired food choices.
- **Environment.** Social support, temptations, etc.
- **Control.** Portion control, ability to resist temptation.
- **Emotional.** How nutrition relates to or impacts certain emotions, such as stress-eating.

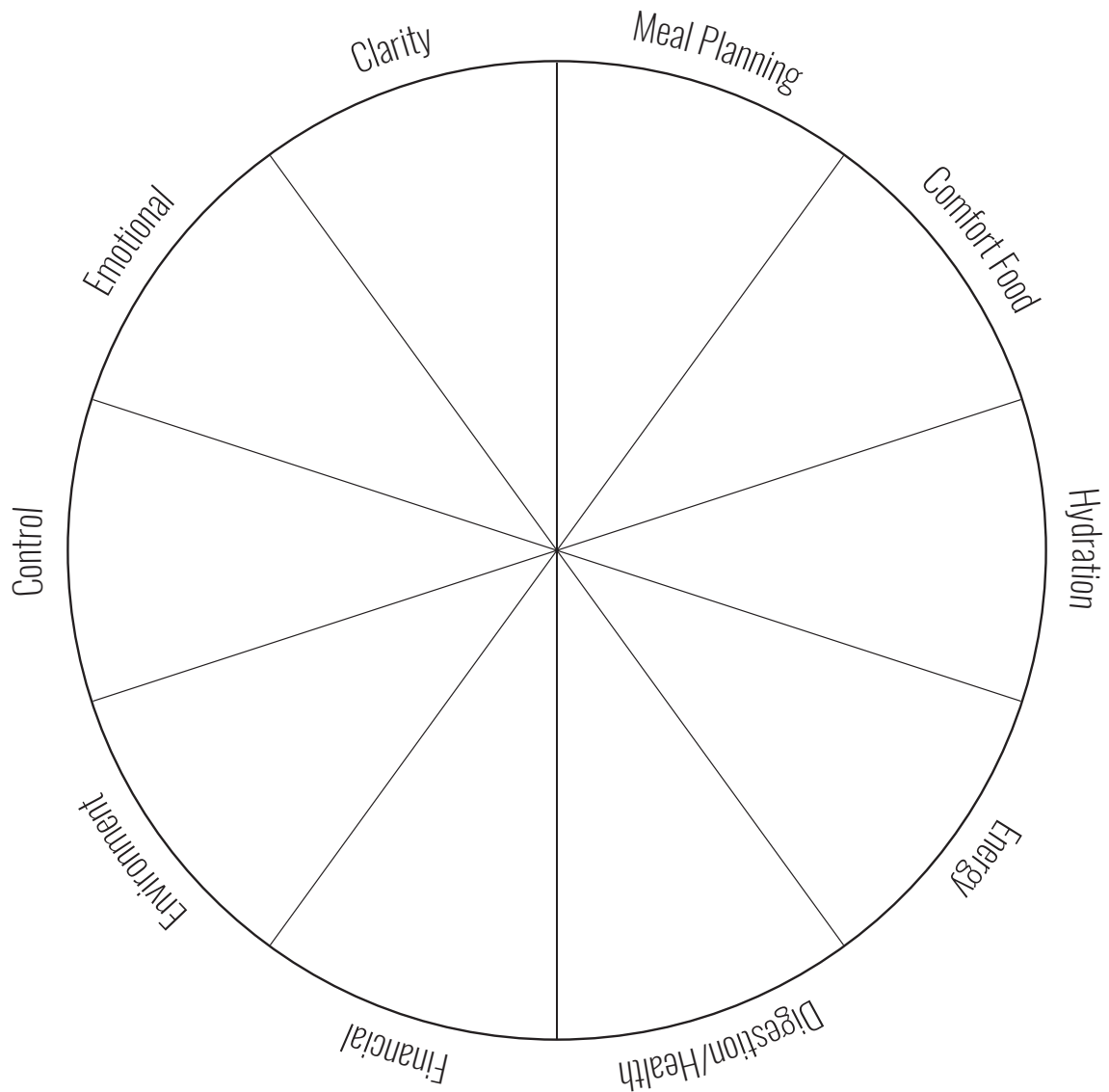
4. Design an alliance with your client in terms of how they would like to interact between themselves, their chosen expert, and you as their coach.

Their chosen expert may desire to order other nutrient tests to assess food sensitivities, deficient nutrients, or some other health marker that needs to be addressed. It is important to explore the ways in which your client would best feel supported in this process. Designing an alliance in this way encourages thoughtful, clear communication between all involved in the client's journey.

5. Follow the Coaching to Flourish Model by clarifying other necessary resources they need to make changes.

Design systems and explore developing stamina to create habits that lead to sustainable lifestyle change. As a wellness coach, help your client continue to return to what they are learning and how the client is growing through this journey.

Nutrition Wheel



The Habit Loop

Life thrives when two opposing systems, such as the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems, are in balance. Our bodies are composed of competing systems, each with functions that work at cross-purposes by design. One system is meant to rev us up. The other is meant to calm us down. One system starts working to wake us up. Another, to help us get a good night's sleep. Wellness Coaching helps clients approach life as a series of habits, which are really patterns and systems. Bad habits exist for a reason. They satisfy some system. This chapter looks at how to create states of optimal equilibrium through habit change to bring systems of productivity, rest, and recreation back into balance.

The purpose of this section is to rewire those neural pathways, the internal network of brain cells, which determine habits. The more you do an action, the more neural pathways are built to support that action, and once sufficient pathways are built the action becomes automatic and habitual.⁵²

The Habit Loop is a quick and simple tool based on looking at stress and habits as a system. The idea is to identify the original cue, usually a stressor, and to redesign a new action to handle it.

What

The Habit Loop can be used for any system, from laundry to how to handle emotions to dealing with setbacks. For the sake of this explanation, let's look at organizing mail and procrastination.

- **The cue**

The cue is the starting point that sets the system in motion.⁵³ In terms of mail, it's the mail person dropping the mail in the mailbox, which sparks your urge to open it up. For procrastination, it could be anything from a pesky thought or down emotion from bad news. The best part about coaching is that you get to explore the exact answer for and tailor the tool to your client.

⁵² Duhigg, Charles. 2012. *The Power of Habit: Why We Do What We Do in Life and Business*. New York: Random House.

⁵³ Aarts, H. A. G., Paulussen, T., & Schaalma, H. P. 1997. Physical exercise habit: On the conceptualization and formation of habitual health behaviours. *Health Education Research: Theory & Practice*, 12, 363-374.

- **The resources**

These are the raw ingredients that the system starts with - in this example, the mail. The resources are often similar to the cue but add in elements like *time*, *energy*, and other intangibles that your client brings to the system. As a guideline, when you design a system that works for your client, you want to minimize the required *time* and *energy* your client needs to keep the system working, thus enabling states of flow.

- **The natural flow**

The flow is what naturally wants to happen. Notice the spot where you want to put your mail after getting home at the end of a long day. Notice when your procrastination kicks in and you want to leave your briefcase, coat, and keys wherever they happen to fall. When people first go in to clean up a space, they dive in, thus destroying valuable information on what naturally wants to happen, or the flow. Instead, notice what wants to happen or happens naturally in your space. If your client has a messy room or office, have them note what happens with their planner (either electronic or paper), notes, binders, anything else they use to be productive. (If you're brave, you can include the electronic files too.) A system designed to work with flow is more effective because it requires less time and energy from your client, making it more likely that they will follow through.

- **Structures**

Structures are the reason that designing for flow makes life easier for your client and reduces stress. They are little stopping points for stuff, thoughts, or emotions, that your client designs that work with flow to achieve the desired outcome. A structure for mail could be having a bin for the mail if there has not been time to open it yet with a recycle bin right next to it. Both the holding bin and recycle bin would be structures. Another structure might be a filing system to handle the most commonly received piece of mail that needs to be sorted. Structures might take longer to set up at first, but if they are to work, they need to be easier to use than the default old flow. For intangible systems, like managing procrastination, a client might have a friend or coach hold them accountable. It could be a reminder set on their phone to listen to their Vision Recording. It could be a journal or an aromatherapy scent. Anything you create as a structure should remind you to get back on track.

- **Outcome**

The outcome is what naturally wants to happen based on the flow and structures. The default outcome is the outcome that happened before a client has worked on it with a coach. The new outcome is the outcome that will hopefully happen based on the new structures and improved flow. If the system is successful, a client gets the same if not better outcome using less time and energy because the structures are improved.

- **Feedback**

As your client designs and builds structures that facilitate habit change, create a way to check-in and see how the structure is working. “Fire-Ready-Aim” is an approach that can work well here. It simply means that sometimes, it is more effective to do *something* rather than waiting until a perfect structure is discovered. If it’s not the right system or structure, your client can re-calibrate as needed after trying it out.

Why

Coaching for habit change is incredibly important to a client’s success. So much of our lives are built on habits. Empowering your client with knowledge and experience in effectively changing habits provides so much value to your client. Here is why coaching is so efficient in helping people change habits:

A. Efficient and Smart Design.

Most people try to change a habit by simply ignoring the cue. Doing so takes a ton of willpower since you are telling your brain, “Let’s just pretend that this whole neural pathway doesn’t exist right now.” Very few people are able to simply use willpower and pull off a cold turkey habit change, but it is possible. More reliable, however, is embracing the cue and building a stronger neural pathway for a new action.¹² The brain has plasticity, but that plasticity comes from the ability to create *new* neural pathways. The old habit, the old neural pathway will always be there, ready to be activated. However, the key to habit change is recognizing the power of the old action, yet designing a new action that is more compelling, which over time, becomes more automatic than the original action. Breaking a habit without adding something new will often result in lapsing back into the old habit.

B. Accountability.

Increased clarity, a little willpower, and accountability often tip the scales for clients to follow through on actions and establish new habits. Some clients might wait until the last minute before the next coaching session to finally pound out a new chapter on the novel or get in that last exercise session, but having coaching sessions and someone to be held accountable to helps establish new habits.

How

Whatever the new habit or action to help people restore balance, there is usually an aspect of self-care or productivity that people add into their days that makes all the difference.

The main task in habit change is disrupting patterns. Ignoring a cue does not work in the long-run. It may create short-term change, but eventually willpower runs out. The principle at work here is focusing *on only one change designed to spark a different chain of events*. The challenge as a coach is to find out what that one change is. Is it getting to the gym early in the morning? Is it getting to bed early? Drinking water? Booking a massage monthly? Starting that blog post before getting the coffee going? Meditating and praying each morning?

Let's take a look at how the Habit Loop might be applied to making a different food choice and exercise as two examples.

Habit Loop 1

You help your client identify the cue, action (or inaction), and feedback for a current bad habit or inaction. You want to start with *what is currently happening* and build from there in the next loop.

For this exercise the habit elements might be:

1. Cue:

Something that sparks the subsequent action or habit. For example, the client could be hungry, which leads them to the unhealthy action that needs to change. Sometimes, the issue also lies in the fact that there is no cue to spark a subsequent action. For example, a client may not be exercising because they do not have, or are unaware of, a cue that prompts exercise.

2. Action 1 (Natural Flow or Habit):

The original action associated with the habit. It is the default action that currently follows the cue. In the case of the hungry client, they typically grab a candy bar. In the case of there not being a cue, the action is inaction (not exercising).

3. Outcome:

The payoff for taking the action that satisfies the cue. After eating the candy bar, the client gets a burst of sugar and feels great for a while (and the hunger is gone), which reinforces the idea that the action is working. No cue leads to not exercising, which leads back to the client not remembering or planning to exercise.

4. Feedback:

Completion of the habit loop that strengthens the neural pathway. The candy bar is satisfying and solves the issue at hand. When it comes to exercise, the client just doesn't see the point and it simply is not on their radar.

Habit Loop 2

Once you have your client complete Habit Loop 1, and they have reflected on current cues and actions, it's time to turn attention to creating new habits.

1. Cue:

The key is to start with the same cue but design a slightly different alternative action to take.

For the client whose cue is being hungry, you would maintain that same trigger point for Habit Loop 2. The whole idea is to change the action that comes after the natural cue.

The previous example of exercise with no cue is a little tricky, but the example will hopefully show how powerful and flexible this concept can be. In this case, you should help your client identify a decision point and become aware of when they make the choice to either ignore or schedule in exercise. Let's say you ask your client when they make the decision to add things to the calendar. Your client responds that Sunday night is the night when the weekly schedule is set. Sunday night scheduling now becomes the common cue between not exercising (old habit) and the creation of a new habit

(exercising). It's not that your client created a new cue, it is simply that they developed a new awareness about it.

2. Action 2 (New Flow or Habit):

You want to help you client design an action step that is similar enough and that satisfies the initial craving but different enough that you don't have the collateral negative impact of the original habit.

Let's go back to the example of the client whose cue is being hungry. The original habit or action is to reach for a candy bar. The new habit or action, in Habit Loop 2, is to grab a handful of gum.

For the client who is trying to exercise more, the new action would be a walk around their block when they arrive home from work.

3. Outcome:

The next step is to fill out the payoff or outcome from taking the different actions and fill them in for Habit Loop 2. In the case for eating gum, the payoff is chewing something yummy. It gets close enough to satisfy the urge of needing something to chew but avoids eating sugar in that 3pm dip that sets up a night of sugar highs and lows.

The outcome when exercising is that the client feels better, physically and mentally.

4. Feedback:

In the case of exercise, you might have to go a level deeper with the cue and action step, and make the cue stronger. You've established with your client that making a plan for exercising during the week on Sunday night is the decision point (cue) that kicks off a new habit: getting to the gym. Having 'getting to the gym' as the new action step could work. The payoff, in this case, would be that amazing feeling of working out which is very different from the original payoff (not thinking about exercise). Such a dramatic shift in payoffs can take a bit to integrate, but the impact on the quality of life can't be overestimated.

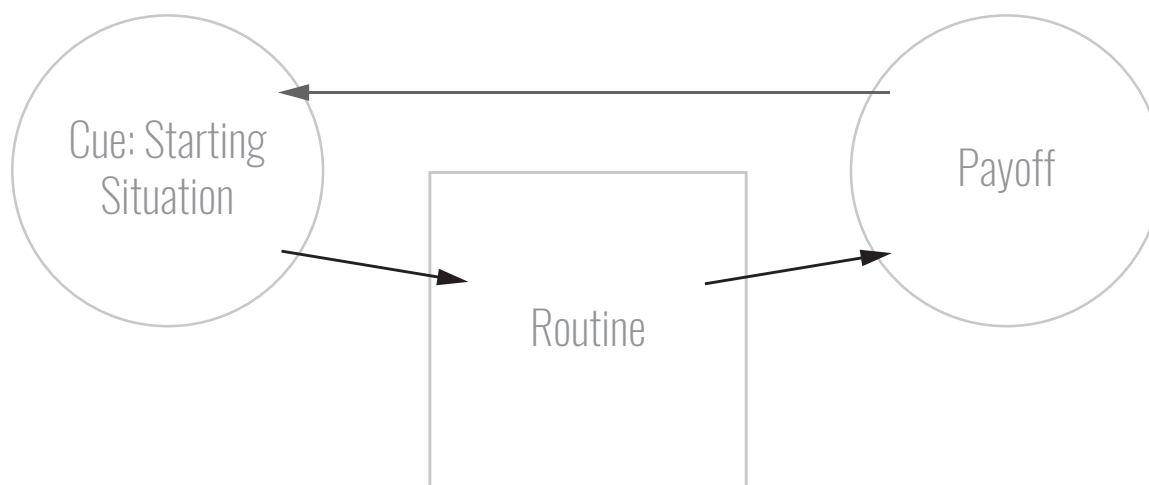
Let's go a step deeper to show another way to take the coaching concept. Imagine for a moment that you are your client. You've just blurted out all your thoughts about exercise and have come up with Sunday night as the decision point on whether or not you set up exercise on the calendar. You see the exercise appointment coming up on your calendar.

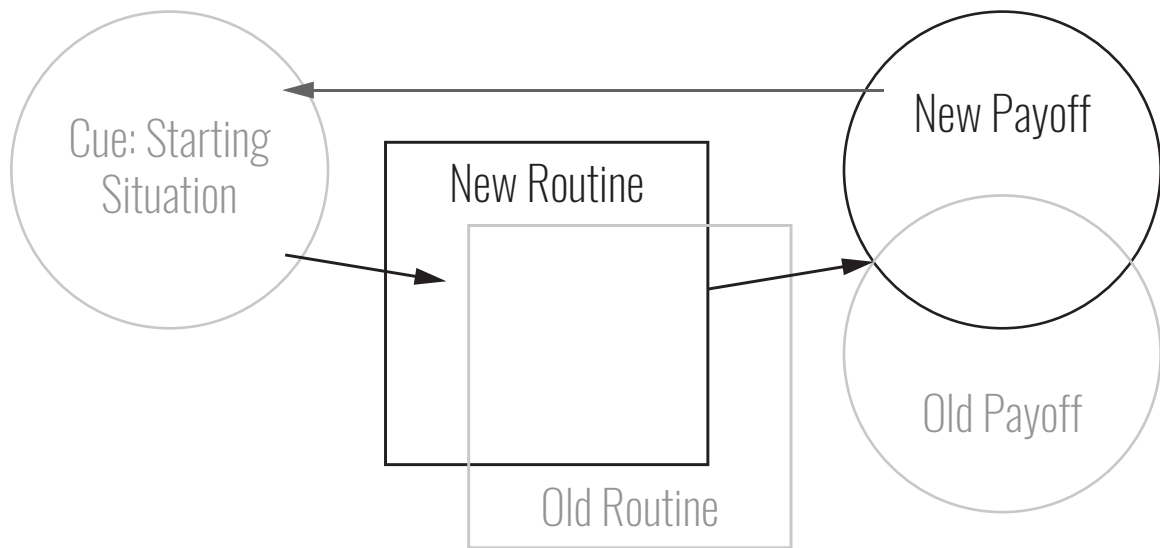
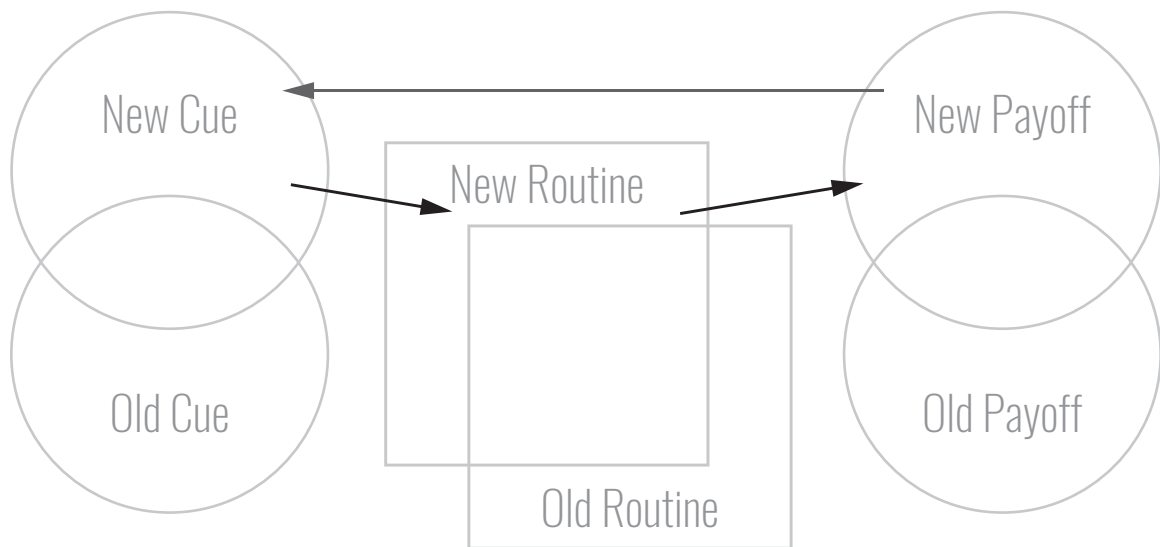
What else would you need? What other actions or thoughts would be helpful? Take this curiosity and translate it into powerful questions for your client.

When thinking in terms of habits, you want to think about life as a system and make the next step as easy as possible to take. You could ask, “What else would you want to have prepared to make exercising easy?” Your client responds, “A plan and all my stuff set out ready to go the night before.” So setting out all their clothes the night before becomes the new action step that leads to exercising (and perhaps that great after exercise feeling) being the outcome.

The Habit Loop

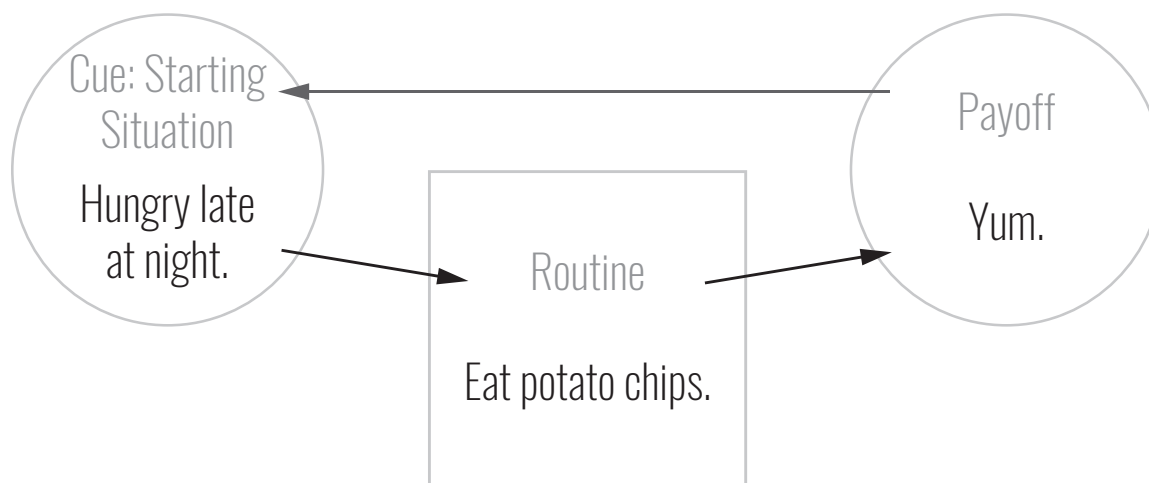
Step 1: Explore Current Habit



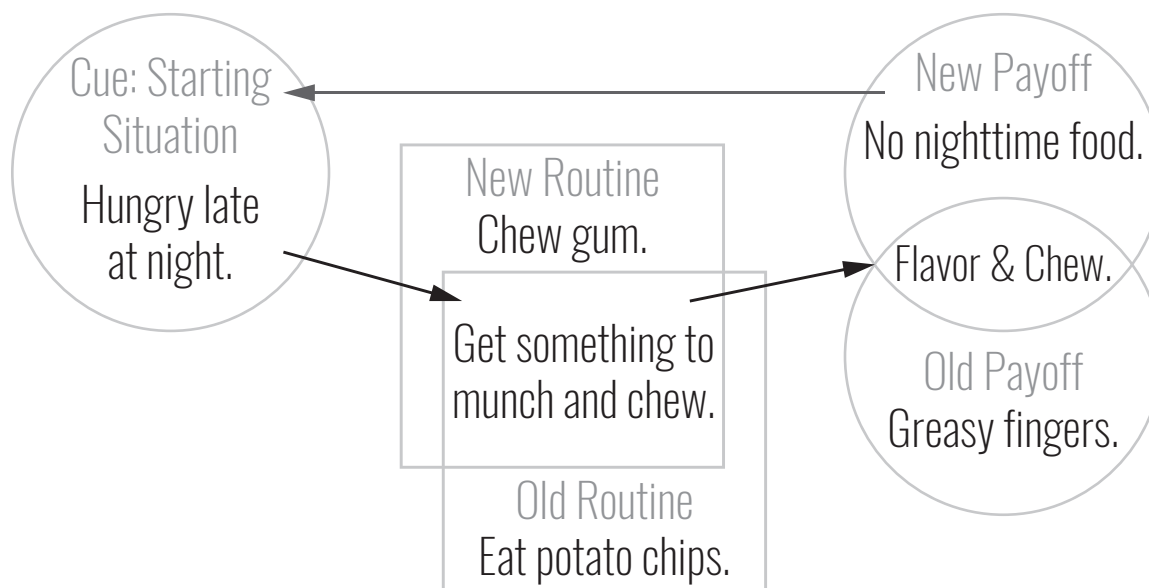
Step 2: Same Start, Similar Routine**Step 3: Similar Cue, Similar Routine**

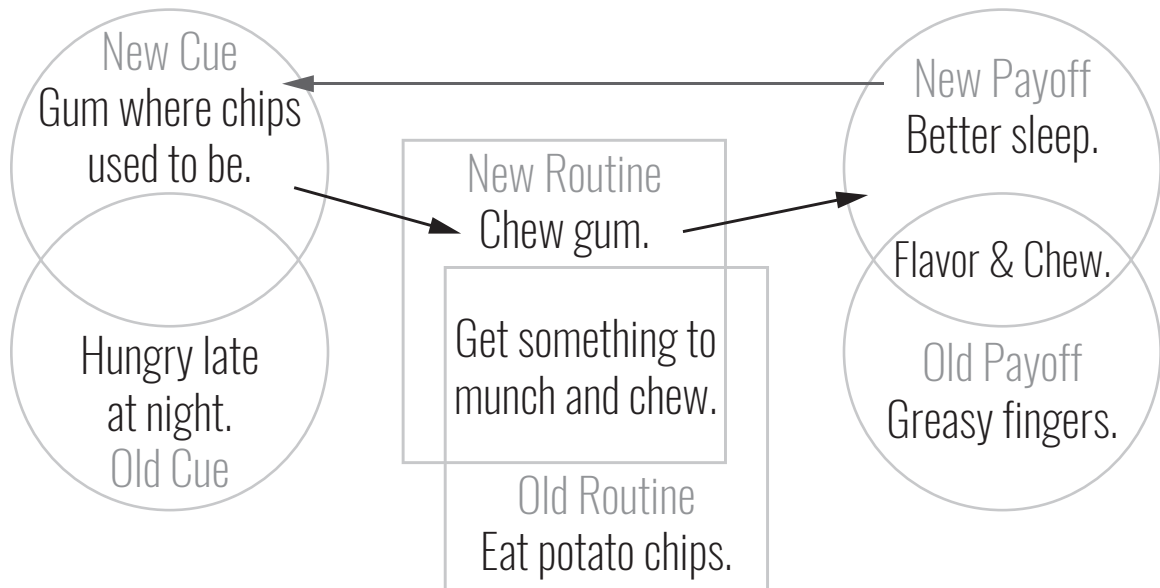
Habit Loop Example

Step 1: Explore Current Habit



Step 2: Same Start, Similar Routine



Step 3: Similar Cue, Similar Routine

13: Motivation Styles

Chapter Overview

The quality of motivation matters because it sparks action and energizes you to take steps forward when the going gets tough. Understanding specific styles of motivation—intrinsic versus conditional, proactive (toward benefit) versus reactive (away from threat), self-interest versus empathetic—helps your client develop a more refined ability and flexibility to employ all styles.

The following exercise helps your client become aware of each style and understand why it is important to tap into the different styles at different times. Each style has its own benefits and drawbacks. To continually push potential, we need each style.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Empathetic, Empowering, Curious, Courageous, Confident, Inspiring

Skill-Check Questions

What are the different aspects of motivation?

What's useful about each aspect? What are the drawbacks?

How can I design action as a way of testing the action plan and the quality of motivation?

Motivation Styles

When clients understand distinctions in motivation styles, and which motivation styles work best for them, they do not have to rely exclusively on willpower to stay on track. They can start to create systems that support and remind them of different perspectives or reasons to keep moving forward. Having an awareness of motivation styles leads to smarter systems. Let's examine the distinctions between motivation styles, the reasons why they work, and then how to use them when working with clients.

What

- **Conditional vs. intrinsic motivation**

Intrinsic motivation is experiencing Flow and joy from the activity at hand. It's doing something for the love of the activity, or for the internal satisfaction you get from doing it, rather than looking for or expecting an external reward in return. Finding intrinsic joy in unpleasant tasks is a super power that requires focus and mental discipline. It is also a habit, and becomes easier to accomplish as clients develop stronger skills to deal with drudgery and adopt a more resourceful, positive attitude. On the other hand, tapping into conditional motivation (i.e. doing something for the sake of the reward at the end of the task) is not necessarily useless. Conditional motivation can be extremely useful to get clients to move quickly. However, in the long run, sustaining conditional motivation requires larger and larger payoffs, or less and less work, for the same reward at the end of the journey.

- **Proactive vs. reactive motivation**

Proactive motivation is being motivated in advance based on a positive vision of what you are working toward. It is being motivated toward something beneficial. Reactive motivation is getting in gear because a deadline is staring you in the face and you have to get moving now. It is being motivated away from pain. The benefit of proactive motivation is that it feels good and is more easily sustained in the long run. The drawback is that it's challenging to spark. Reactive motivation is easier to spark, but harder to sustain in the long run. We need both.

- **Self vs. empathetic motivation**

Self-motivation is being motivated for the sake of self. Empathetic motivation is being motivated for the sake of others. Coaches who are looking to build a larger coaching practice experience much more anxiety and fear when they are only motivated for the sake of themselves.

Tapping into motivation for the sake of others helps us get out of our own way, and it functions similarly to listening empathetically. People are more joyful, more fulfilled, less stressed, and less anxious when working for the benefit of others.

Why

A. Creates awareness.

Often, individuals do not realize that there are different motivation styles. The pressure of finances, health, and family tends to drive a conditional, reactive, sake-of-self motivation style. Empowering clients with the awareness (and results) of alternative motivation styles is like providing a map to guide them out of the hazy procrastination forest. By stumbling around in the procrastination forest, clients might eventually reach the golden fields of being on top of their work, but having a map makes the journey so much faster and easier.

B. Develops stamina.

A big part of motivation and accomplishment is having the stamina to stick with frustration and setbacks long enough to experience a breakthrough. So often, clients stop short in taking those next steps because stamina is low. Tapping into alternative motivation styles helps clients manage their energy differently. Like shifting into different gears in a car, leveraging alternative motivation combinations can serve different functions throughout the client's day.

C. Leads to better results.

Perhaps the biggest reason why motivation styles work so well with clients is that experimenting with different ways to get motivated leads to a resourceful, almost playful, mindset. Any time a client is curious about trying different approaches, you have the opportunity as a coach to help your client explore different mindsets as well.

The combination of different mindsets and actions is powerful, and can lead to quick results, which demonstrates that the mindsets and actions are working.

How: Conditional vs. Intrinsic Motivation

Intrinsic motivation seems to be getting all the praise these days. And rightfully so. Tapping into intrinsic motivation—doing something for the sheer joy of doing it—is intertwined with the state of *flow*. Flow exists at the intersection of skill and challenge. It is that blissful experience of being immersed and fully engaged in the present moment.

Conditional motivation, on the other hand, gets the bad reputation of creating more problems than it solves. Conditional motivation is doing something only because the reward or benefit at the end of the task is worth it. It is doing dull administrative work because you want to keep your job or grow your business.

The bottom line is that both intrinsic and conditional motivation are useful and necessary for leading a productive, fulfilled life. When applying conditional and intrinsic motivation to food choice, most people rely on conditional motivation at first. It's tough to make not eating a cookie intrinsically motivating. A client skips the cake because they want to look a certain way once swimsuit season comes around. The problem, however, with conditional motivation and food choice is that it tends to run out or lead to a yo-yo pattern. Instead, the opportunity with using intrinsic motivation and food choice is to explore what perspective your client needs to be in to enjoy the state of making optimal decisions. When you can pivot the coaching to go deep enough to include the state of Being, you now have a foundation to make almost any unsavory task at least palatable, and then even enjoyable. The task is not enjoyed because the task is fun. The task is enjoyed because of what it says about you as a person and the characteristics you're employing.

Such a shift helps people grasp a deep truth about procrastination and poor time management decisions. The usual reason not to procrastinate is to get something accomplished. It's all about the end goal in mind. It's not a bad reason, but it does take a fair share of willpower to pluck up the energy to take on the task, and hopefully you make enough progress to keep you going through completion.

Another, deeper reason not to procrastinate is because it feels so good in the moment to know that you are doing the work and making the best choices for yourself at the time. There is a certain joy in doing the most important work. When you are in the moment of doing your life's work, you know it. When you can link food choice to a positive, powerful force of making the

most useful decision and doing the most useful work, you've helped your client with a powerful new perspective and tool to use for motivation.

When addressing these concepts in coaching, here are a few guidelines to think about:

- 1. Be straightforward.**

Ask your client when they use intrinsic or conditional motivation. It is surprising how simply raising awareness in a coaching setting, combined with curiosity, can lead to more insight and inspired action plans.

- 2. Use a borrowed perspective from another area of your client's life.**

Ask your client about an area of life where they easily tap into intrinsic motivation. Help your client define the perspective, recognize the pattern, and pull out details of the experience of being in Flow. Then ask your client to apply that same mindset to another area of their life. The client is borrowing an intrinsic perspective and applying it to another area.

- 3. Rely on self-realization.**

Developing skills and stamina can be intrinsically motivating. It feels good to work hard. Using the challenge to test personal skills and stamina puts the focus and attention on the ability to work, rather than on the task at hand. Such a shift can help clients tap into intrinsic motivation by making the skill development the topic, so performing the task just happens to be the playground for building the ability.

- 4. Try the 2% experiment.**

This is my personal favorite. It involves asking a client the next time they are in the middle of dreaded work to become curious about that 2% of joy that they experience. Usually clients can find a small element of a subject that is enjoyable. If they can start to look for even little things they like about the work, it can help build more understanding. And people like what they understand.

- 5. Finally, look for ways to make the work a game.**

Can I get through all this work by 2 pm? Can I write in my habit tracker each day for two weeks straight? Can I keep up this streak? When clients shift their perspective to make

the work a game, they invite the experience of Flow, which most likely taps into intrinsic motivation.

How: Reactive vs. Proactive Motivation (Motivation Away From vs. Motivation Toward)

“Reactive motivation” is a fancy term for describing the “motivation away from” a particular thing. The difference between being motivated away from something undesired versus being motivated toward something desired is stark. Such a difference shows up in the quality of perspectives and eventual results. Reactive motivation invites a rollercoaster of slacking off and panicked action. It’s the rollercoaster of crash diets followed by “I’ll eat whatever, whenever”. When the undesirable state or danger is far away, taking it easy and coasting makes the most sense. However, when the undesired result rears its ugly head, bam, it is time to shift into action! Clients on this rollercoaster bounce between ignoring work and scrambling to keep up. It creates a pattern of bouncing between procrastination and putting out fires. A reactive motivation style can be effective in short bursts, but in the long run, it leads to stress overload.

Proactive motivation (or motivation toward) feels great. Tapping into this style consistently is the tricky part. People who tap into proactive motivation do the work ahead of time, and work to create systems to solve problems before they come up. The challenge is getting the gumption to do the work well before a deadline looms. One of the hardest parts of proactive motivation is believing that the goal is achievable and can be a reality. So often, goals involve an element of chance. Even if the work is done, a client might not get to the goal. You might not get that promotion or land that paying client, even if you do all the right things and put in the work. Proactive motivation requires focusing on the aspects of a goal that are within the client’s control, then trusting that if the work is done, the results will eventually follow.

As a coach, your job is to help clients design ways to use both forms of motivation—proactive and reactive—mindfully and intentionally. Below are steps you can take, as a coach, to help your client become more aware of these two types of motivation:

1. Bring awareness to the mechanics of proactive and reactive motivation.

Proactive motivation does not have the steep climbs that are experienced in reactive motivation, but neither does it have the big dips. Often, the simple awareness of the two

styles, and the patterns each produces, is enough for clients to start shifting motivation styles.

2. **Use the exercise to further explore the concept of reactive vs. proactive motivation by asking curious questions.**
3. **Move on to the next section, Motivation for the Sake of Self vs. Other, to tie these motivation styles together.**

How: Self vs. Empathetic Motivation (Motivation for the Sake of Self vs. Other)

This *Motivation Chart* ties all the distinctions of motivation together and adds a third: motivation for the sake of self vs. other. This distinction is designed to get clients thinking empathetically. It requires them to think in terms of the future and the impact they want to have on the world. The aim of the exercise is for clients to tap into being motivated for the sake of something larger than themselves. In terms of food choice, the decision becomes much more about how being healthy and making healthy choices affects others around them.

Being motivated for a larger cause creates a context that gives even mundane tasks a deeper meaning. The main objective of this session is to introduce clients to the concept of taking action for the sake of something larger than themselves. Follow the steps below to work through the *Motivation Chart*.

1. **Identify the outcome your client wants.**

The more specific, the better. It could be “to get to the gym five times a week” or “to eat according to my plan.”

2. **Start in the upper left of the *Motivation Chart*, asking your client, “What are the negative outcomes that will happen if you do not follow through?”**

Then shift to the upper right side of the chart, asking, “What are the positive outcomes that will happen if you *do* follow through?” Continue to the bottom left side of the chart, Empathetic-Reactive, asking “What are the negative outcomes that will happen in the lives of others if you do not follow through?” Then move to the bottom right side of the

chart, asking “What are the positive outcomes that will happen in the lives of others if you do follow through?”

3. Coach from the topic-rich environment you've created.

Ask your client where they want to go next, or what insights they have. At the end of the session, it is useful to have an action plan that tests out your client's new approach to motivation to see what works and what needs to be changed.

	Skipped it	Did it
In my life		
In the lives of others		
In the future (in the lives of people you do not yet know.)		

Exercise

If the benefits of exercise could be condensed and as easily administered as swallowing a pill, it would be the most prescribed medicine in the world.⁵⁴ Human beings are suited to live a life of movement. The human body's stress response is adapted to react to physical stressors, such as having to run after food all day or to run away from something that wants to eat us as food. Fortunately – or unfortunately when it comes to stress management – the same level of physical activity is no longer required for survival. Indeed, people have found ways to engineer most physical activity out of daily life. Cars provide the majority of transportation. Sitting at a computer is the most common workstation. All this inactivity has caught up with society to produce some of the most troubling health statistics ever recorded. Record numbers of people are unhealthy, directly related to insufficient exercise and unhealthy food choices.⁵⁵

In terms of managing stress, exercise is the single best tool. The release of helpful hormones such as serotonin, norepinephrine, and dopamine, as well as other agents created by exercise that halt or reverse effects of aging, make exercise necessary for optimal brain functioning.⁵⁶

Dr. John Ratey in *Spark: The revolutionary new science of exercise and the brain* refers to Naperville Central High School in Illinois as an example of the effect of exercise on brain performance. Students who do not exercise in the morning show an average increase of 11% in reading comprehension over the course of an academic year.⁵⁷ Conversely, students who exercise strenuously in the morning show an average increase of 17% in reading comprehension over the same period. People who exercise in the mornings have better moods, can focus for longer periods of time, and are more capable of being able to manage stressors without the accompanying release of hormones associated with being stressed out.

⁵⁴ Sapolsky, R. M. 1994. *Why Zebras Don't Get Ulcers: A guide to stress, stress related diseases, and coping*. New York: W.H. Freeman.

⁵⁵ Babyak M, Blumenthal JA, Herman S, Khatri P, Doraiswamy M, Moore K, Craighead WE, Baldewicz TT, Krishnan KR. 2000. Exercise treatment for major depression: maintenance of therapeutic benefit at 10 months. *Psychosom Med*. 5:633-8.

⁵⁶ Wipfli BM, Rethorst CD, Landers DM. 2008. The anxiolytic effects of exercise: a meta-analysis of randomized trials and dose-response analysis. *J Sport Exerc Psychol*. 24:392-410. Erratum in: *J Sport Exerc Psychol*. 2009 1:128-9.

⁵⁷ Ratey. John J. 2008. *Spark: The revolutionary new science of exercise and the brain*.

Let's first look at the elements of exercise (stretching, weights, aerobic, anaerobic, etc.) and how to support a client who chooses to work with a fitness expert. Then, let's take a look at different excuses to not exercise and how you can approach those as a wellness coach.

Foundation of Exercise

Any exercise professionally developed is built on these five elements:

1. **Flexibility/Mobility/Stability.**

Flexibility is the length of a muscle. Mobility is how freely a joint can move through a full range of motion. Stability or Motor Control, is the ability to maintain control of joints through static or dynamic movement.

2. **Resistance Training.**

Improves muscular strength and endurance. Includes weightlifting and calisthenics.

3. **Cardiovascular Training.**

Any exercise that increases your heart rate. Cardio training will often involve both aerobic and anaerobic exercise.

4. **Anaerobic exercise.**

Short duration, high-intensity activity. For example, resistance training or sprinting (running or cycling).

5. **Aerobic exercise.**

This form of exercise is what is commonly known as “cardio.” Examples are cardio machines, biking, running, swimming, kettlebell swings, walking, hiking, aerobic classes, kickboxing. Aerobic exercises will turn into anaerobic exercises if performed at a level of intensity that is too high.

Personal Training

To give your client confidence and another form of accountability, it may be helpful to recommend your client seek out a personal trainer.⁷ If your client wants to make the investment, a trainer would make sure that your client is performing exercises correctly, design a program that is tailored for them, and will give your client the tools to be able to successfully work out on their own as well.

During the first personal training session, the good trainer will ask the client a series of questions and design an alliance, just like the client did with you the wellness coach, to help create a program that will put the client in control of their own physical performance and well-being. The client should expect that, on the most basic level, the trainer will ask for your client's medical and injury history and go through a movement assessment.

Common Excuses

These excuses are the most common reasons people do not exercise:

1. “I don’t have time to fit it in.”

Perhaps the most common excuse, being too busy to exercise, is a result of a frantic pace of life, as well as not understanding how important exercise is to short-term performance and long-term health.

2. “I don’t know where to start.”

Especially if someone is out of shape, starting an exercise routine can be bewildering and intimidating.

3. “I’m injured.”

Getting injured from trying to exercise too strenuously or not easing into a routine is another common problem that derails consistent exercise. Past experiences of injuries often serve as easy excuses to put exercise at the bottom of a priority list.

4. “I don’t see results.”

The problem with exercising to see results in appearance is two-fold. First, exercising solely for the sake of weight loss is simply not fun. If activity is not fun and desired results are slow in coming, people eventually find excuses to stop.

Common Helpful Factors

Some of the most common reasons people *do* exercise:

1. “I am having fun.”

If the exercise in and of itself is fun, people will most likely stick with the exercise. Whether it is rock climbing, mountain biking, running, weight lifting or yoga, if someone enjoys the process and time spent, the odds of consistent exercise skyrocket.

2. “I have my workouts scheduled.”

Developing simple systems and structures, such as a time set aside for exercise, a routine to get prepared, setting aside clothing the night before, etc, increases chances of working out.

3. “I have to meet someone there.”

An accountability buddy or having to meet a trainer is another common factor boosting someone’s chance of exercising regularly.

4. “I just feel better.”

When someone exercises regularly, they get used to how good it feels, as well as experience the boost in productivity and stress management. Not working out is equated to deciding to feel bad and be not as productive.

The conundrum of coaching someone who wants to manage stress, but does not want to exercise is like trying to help someone who wants to get a drink of water, but does not want to grab a water bottle.⁵⁸ Consistent exercise is the most robustly proven tool to help manage stress, yet as coaches, our job is still to support the agenda of the client. Fortunately, however, if a client is

⁵⁸ Rethorst CD, Wipfli BM, Landers DM. The antidepressive effects of exercise: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. Sports Med. 2009.

hiring a health and wellness coach, chances are your client will also want to make consistent exercise a part of their weekly – or hopefully daily – routine. Let's take a look at how to coach exercise through the Coaching to Flourish Model.

Coaching to Flourish Model with Exercise

What

- **Goals or Desired Outcomes [Flower]**

Similar to focusing on nutrition, you start by clarifying your client's aims. Sometimes clients won't even have a starting goal and need your help as a coach to define what success would look like in terms of exercise. Your job is to explore and clarify what would be success for your client.

- **Starting Point [Seed + Roots]**

When looking at exercise, your job as a wellness coach isn't to craft an exercise plan. It is your client's responsibility to do the research and determine which exercise plan to follow or which personal trainer to work with. Your job as a coach is to empower your client with co-designed perspectives and support in exploring what your client is learning about themselves on a journey to discover which exercise works best. At this point, it's also helpful to explore what positive aspects of your client's environment they can leverage, such as a supportive partner, or a gym two blocks away, or a group of mamas who want to run once a week. It's equally helpful to explore how to get minimize negative factors, such as a long commute to work or comments from an unsupportive partner. Exploring is enough. By exploring both positive and negative factors, you're empowering your client to generate insights that lead to meaningful action steps.

- **Habits [Leaves]**

The next step in the Coaching to Flourish Model looks at the habits - the sustainable systems your client has developed. Your client has an opportunity to take a deeper look into their habits and make small tweaks to massive transformations to current usual action steps. (More on Habits below in this chapter.)

- **Stamina [Stem]**

Stamina focuses on the life stamina your client needs to keep going to the gym or working out. You could leverage factors that help clients get to the gym, such as choosing to take on an exercise that your client actually has fun doing, arranging to meet a friend, or having a weekly ritual of crafting a schedule and actually following through.

- **Flourish [Flower]**

After your client has experienced regular exercise, everything changes. From relationships to energy at work to outlook on life, exercise makes a profound difference in someone's life. The key at this stage is to allow your client to enjoy the accomplishment while honing and tweaking the routine to look for ever more effective and fun ways to exercise. While the exercise may be painful to start, once you're halfway into it, it feels like the best thing ever. And you can't beat the feeling after a great workout.

Why

A. Awareness goes a long way.

Simple awareness and addressing exercise go a long way to helping clients make different choices and take different actions when it comes to exercise. Using the assessment wheels that mention exercise in the client workbook – Wellness Wheel and the Address the Stress Wheel – are gateways for you to address exercise with your clients.

B. Working with Science.

When you ask client's how to incorporate more fun and friends into a workout, it's not just good advice. Exercise is one of the most powerful actions we can take to improve our health. When clients start having fun, while also experiencing the accompanying health benefits, working out becomes a treat rather than a chore.

C. Accountability.

In a busy world, it's easy to let someone seemingly nonessential go when super stretched. As a coach, your job is to help your client hold themselves to actually taking the time to workout.

D. Soil and Roots.

Clients thrive when surrounded by support and when placed in a position to succeed. As a wellness coach in your client's life, you are a huge boost to your client's support system. By being involved in helping your client clarify exercise goals and stay accountable, you are helping your client in a deep way. It's one of the reasons why hiring a coach is such a smart thing to do. When you hire a coach, you immediately boost your support system. It's like adding super-charged fertilizer to your soil.

How

The Address the Stress Wheel (see Chapter 5: Learning and Assessment Wheels) heavily emphasizes exercise as an action that helps manage stress. Indeed, exercise takes up a full 50% of the quick version of the wheel, in a grossly unbalanced view of the importance of exercise. However, it's nearly impossible to overestimate the power of exercise to reduce stress levels and boost health. Here are the steps for the Address the Stress Exercise:

- 1. Your client will most likely bring up stress and point to the exercise.**

Or you could bring it up if you thought it'd be the best for your client.

- 2. Explain that the exercise looks at the four most robustly proven activities people can engage in that reduce stress.**

Exercise dominates because it's a full half the circle.

- 3. Ask your client to rate themselves on a scale from 1 to 10 in each of the sections in the Address the Stress Wheel, with 10 being highly satisfied.**

The four areas are exercise, sleep, spirituality, and meditation.

- 4. Ask your client what jumps out at them. (It's usually exercise because it's a really big part of wellness.)**

5. Now you have an opening to address exercise and become curious about the other factors of exercise and your client's self-dialogue about making time for exercise.

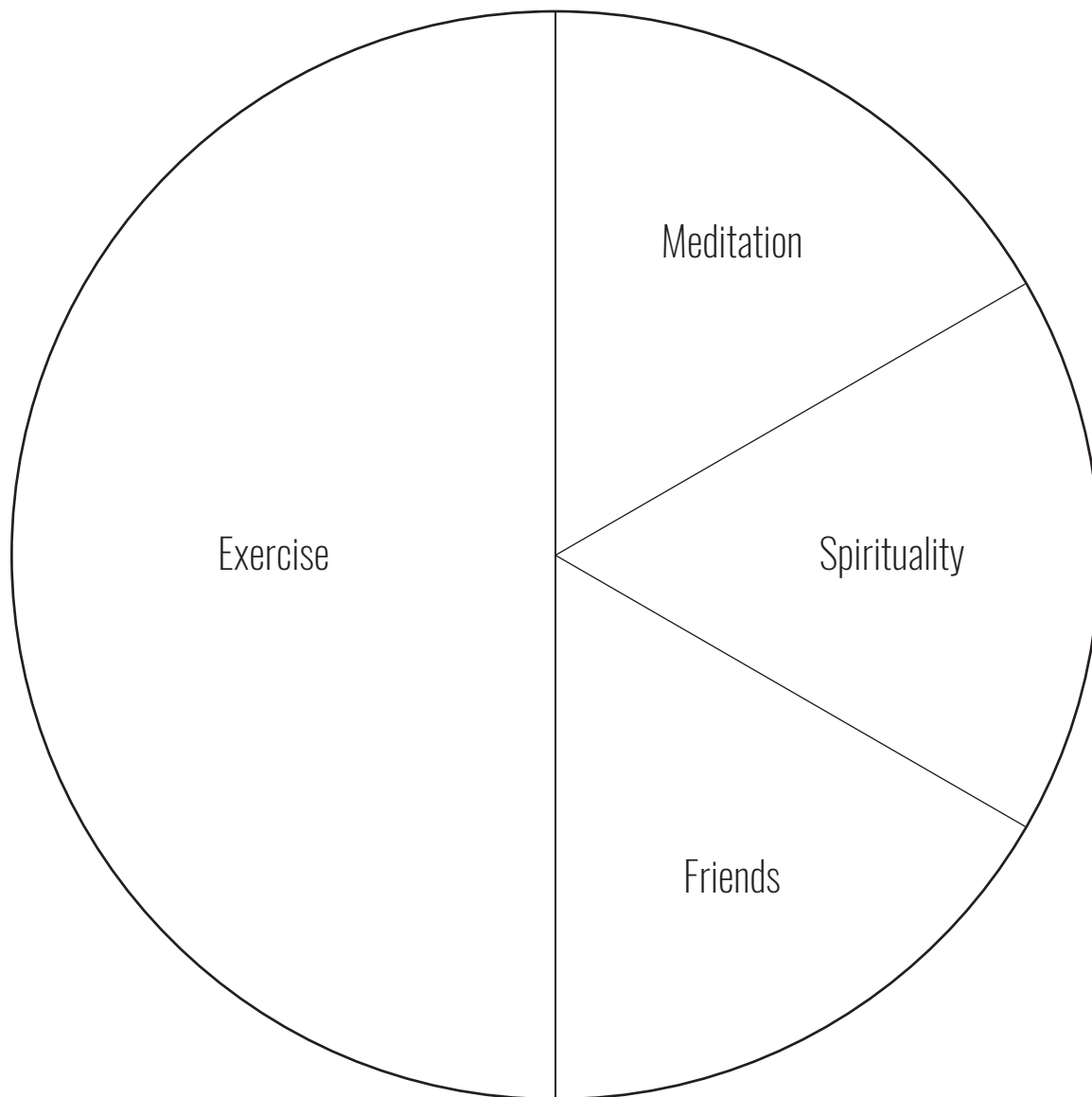
6. Coach as you would with any assessment wheel.

Use what you know about exercise. Get curious about the three big factors of whether or not someone sticks with exercising: pure enjoyment of the activity, meeting a friend or trainer, and actually having a written down scheduled time to exercise.

7. Continue the coaching session following your client's insights or pick up a new coaching concept to keep the session going.

Note: Exercise might also come up when looking at other assessment wheels, or your client might bring it up directly. Another option is to use the Habit Loop, which is covered in the next section. As you gain more familiarity with all the coaching exercises, you will find it easier to apply nearly any of the coaching tools to any topic your client brings up.

Address the Stress



The Cycle of Self-Construction

What

The Cycle of Self-Construction is a tool designed to give visual form to the system of actions that lead to flourishing. When you are at your best, you follow through on your best habits. When you follow through on your best habits, you set the stage to be at your best. Stepping into this positive cycle builds increased resources for people to use to meet tougher challenges. The Cycle of Self-Construction gives clients a tangible tool to experience insights and craft powerful action steps.

- **Cycle**

A diagram that corresponds to an upward cycle when doing well. Cycles are systems with the outcomes feeding back into the starting resources.

- **Self**

Taking care of ourself, knowing strengths and weaknesses, needs and wants, and how we function at our optimum performance. It's the intersection of self-knowledge and self-care.

- **Construction**

Literally building more capacity and ability to respond to future challenges more effectively.

- **Keystone Habit**

The one habit that helps the other habits work together. In the wellness context, this habit is usually morning exercise but not always. It could be drinking water or establishing a meditation routine. It could be having to check in with a coach or writing a daily journal. Usually there is one action that, if someone takes, makes it easier to take another positive step.

- **Habit Cycle**

The succession of actions that come naturally after and eventually lead back to the Keystone Habit.

- **Habit Domino-Effect**

The effect one positive choice has on making other positive choices more easily. Following through on each helpful habit makes the next desired action step easier to accomplish.

- **Preparation**

Steps useful to get back on track with your Keystone Habit. Always staying in a positive habit loop is not realistic – life happens.

Identifying the preparation needed to sustain your Keystone Habit helps build resilience.

Why

A. Theory of Positive Emotions.

Barbara Fredrickson's Broaden and Build Theory focuses on how positive emotion relaxes people and encourages them to play, building a stronger skill set to meet increasingly difficult future challenges.⁵⁹ The Cycle of Self Construction functions the same way. Completing the first habit increases positive emotion and energy for continuing on a positive cycle. If the cycle is broken, the next step is to focus on the Keystone Habit to get back into the cycle.

B. Focus on the client, not the problem.

Often, we get so caught up in the problem that we forget about the supporting habits that will make a successful difference in the long run. The diagram turns the focus from problems to the underlying habits forming a foundation for flourishing.

⁵⁹ For more information on the Broaden and Build theory, see Fredrickson, Barbara L. "The Broaden-and-Build Theory of Positive Emotions." *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences* 359.1449 (2004): 1367–1378.

C. Works with Habits and Systems.

Our life is a series of systems. The assumption is that if we continue to make an effort to troubleshoot and keep moving forward, we can design better systems and ultimately achieve the goals that we have set for ourselves. This assumption is made visible by completing the cycle.

How

1. Set the Stage. Start simple.

You can use a simple question such as: “What habits do you have when you’re at your best?” Do not explain the cycle yet. It’s best if the cycle comes from the client.

2. Explore.

Ask questions that make your client the expert in their own life. You can use questions such as:

- What is the one thing you do that, if you do today or tomorrow, is going to be great?
- If you follow through, what other habits want to come naturally?
- How do you prepare for the following day?
- What’s the habit you’ve been meaning to add to your life?
- What would happen to your life if you adopted this habit?
- Where does the discipline to follow through come from?

3. Introduce the Cycle of Self Construction.

Now that you’ve created a coaching-rich environment with insights and learning from the client, it’s time to introduce the cycle and invite clients to fill it out. “Here’s a tool called the Cycle of Self Construction. It’s based on the idea that, if you follow through on one Keystone Habit, other positive habits also come along. Out of what we’ve talked about, what’s the one or two habits that seem to lead to all the others?”

4. Follow the Cycle. Follow your client.

It's your chance to ask curious questions about your client that are informed by the Cycle. For example, if your client is talking about setting up a new routine to map out the rest of the week on Thursdays as the Keystone Habit, you could ask:

- “What would a detailed weekly schedule give you?”
- “What other positive action would the schedule make easier?”

5. Complete the Cycle.

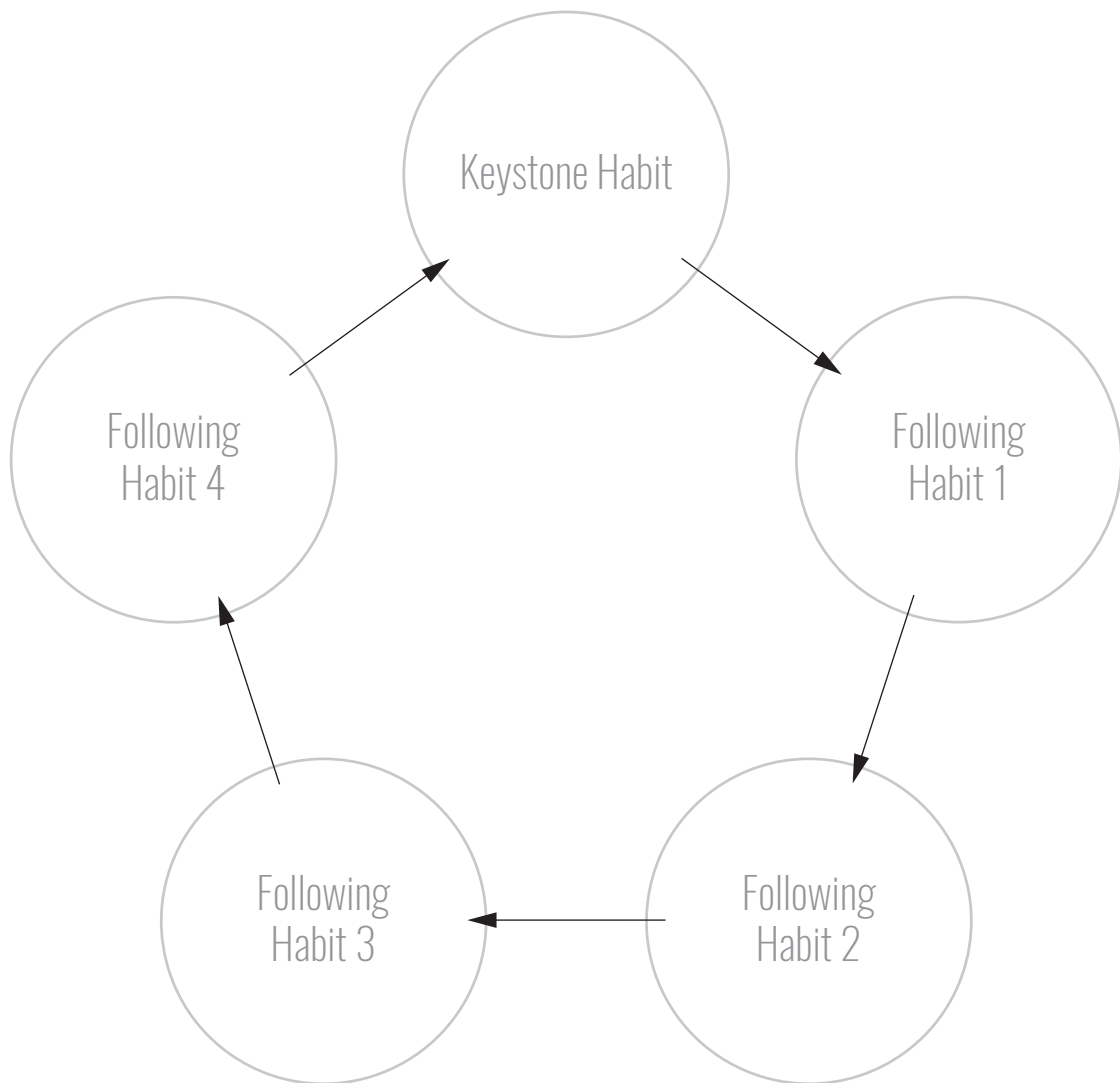
Ask clients about what would complete the Cycle. As the coaching session progresses, you can ask more direct questions about what chain of habits would create a domino effect that would lead back to the Keystone Habit. You don't have to be clever with questions to try to lead the client back. You can be direct. Consider using a question such as: “What chain of habits would start to lead back to the Keystone Habit?”

6. Review Preparation.

Take another look at the preparation. Ask you client about what kind of preparation or accountability is useful to have. For example, if your client determines their keystone action is exercising in the morning, putting out their workout clothes the night before might be the key preparation they need to do. It might be meeting up with a friend to help keep them accountable and make the workout fun. There is usually a key piece of preparation that makes the difference between follow through or falling off. You could ask questions such as:

- “What do you have to let go of to accomplish this action?”
- “What time do you make the decision to follow through?”
- “What small little step makes following through on this action worth it?”
- “What small action can you accomplish or can you prepare ahead of time that would make this action easier to follow through on?”

The Cycle of Self-Construction



14: Future Self

Chapter Overview

The Future Self is a designed, positive perspective. It is set from the client's point of view, ten or fifteen years in the future. The Future Self is a powerful exercise that helps clients create a habit of positive self-talk and a future-oriented perspective.

The Future Self exercise is an exercise that relies heavily on a client's imagination to create an image of themselves in the future. This chapter looks at aspects of the Future Self and techniques to help clients tap into its magic.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Empowering, Confident, Inspired

Skill-Check Questions

How can I effectively lead a client through the Future Self visualization?

How can I help clients remember to use the exercise between coaching sessions?

Future Self

Studies in positive psychology have found that the vast majority of concepts we create about ourselves in the future are extremely optimistic, and that such an outlook is crucial to long-term health.⁶⁰ Even during tough times, the Future Self is usually overwhelmingly positive.⁶¹ If your client is having a hard time creating a positive vision of life in the future, gently guide them to create a neutral image while gradually making the details increasingly positive. Our brains are wired to create positive *Future Self* concepts. It's simply a matter of giving ourselves permission to tap into that wiring and follow our imagination.

The key benefit of creating a positive Future Self is that clients can get a sense of *who they are going to be* rather than *what they are going to do*. Remember being asked as a child, “What do you want to be when you grow up?” It usually meant, “What job or profession are you going to have when you grow up?” Adults may get asked, “What are your plans this year?” In both scenarios, it has the individual thinking only about *Actions* (the “*Doing*”) they are going to take in the future without thinking about the *Being*. The *Future Self* concept can include a job or profession, but it goes beyond that by helping clients get a feeling for the whole person they are striving to become. The *Future Self* includes all the positive perspectives, experiences, and knowledge that clients have gained throughout the years. Helping clients tap into that inner knowing and perspective is incredibly powerful.

What

- **Image of who they are going to be**

When most clients think of the future, often a specific job is the first thing that comes to mind. Other things might be family, a house, a car, a vacation, etc. The *Future Self* exercise helps clients focus more on character qualities than on career or possessions. It's not that a career or possessions aren't important, but for this exercise we want to focus on deeper aspects of a client's life that are not normally addressed.

⁶⁰ Rutchick, A. M., Slepian, M. L., Reyes, M. O., Pleskus, L. N., & Hershfield, H. E. (2018). Future self-continuity is associated with improved health and increases exercise behavior. *Journal of Experimental Psychology: Applied*, 24(1), 72–80.

⁶¹ Liberman, N., & Trope, Y. (1998). The role of feasibility and desirability considerations in near and distant future decisions: A test of temporal construal theory. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 75, 5–18.

- **Description**

Creating a detailed description of a Future Self adds so much value for your client. A Future Self has specific clothing, a geographic location, a physical description, top values, perspectives, a typical day—essentially all the things that real people have. Your client’s job is to create this description using their imagination. Such a description helps make the positive perspective more vivid and useful.

- **Nickname**

Creating a nickname, a name that only the coach and the client will use to refer to the Future Self, is often the key to helping distinguish the current perspective from that of the Future Self.

- **Positive perspective**

A *Future Self* includes a positive perspective that offers wisdom to your client.

- **Relationship between present self and Future Self**

The *Future Self* represents a relationship between the client’s current default perspective and a perspective that goes years in the future and looks back. The gap between those perspectives is personified in the relationship between the present-day self and the Future Self.

Why

A. Addresses *Doing* and *Being*.

Most clients have dreamed of what the future holds, but the *Future Self* exercise takes that to another level by looking at who your client will be. By imagining specific characteristics and wisdom gained through the years, your client has a method for directly addressing desired personal growth. You give your client a way to balance dreaming of both the *Doing* (career) and the *Being* (personal characteristics).

B. Paints an optimistic future.

Human beings naturally have an optimistic view of the distant future. The *Future Self* is effective because it gives shape to that natural instinct and makes the future come to life.

C. Takes a strong, positive perspective.

Asking the Future Self questions is equivalent to taking a strong, positive perspective. It is similar to a *Bird's Eye View*, but instead of looking at life from above, it looks at life from a time in the distant future.

How

- 1. Explain the concept of the Future Self. Provide examples of your own Future Self, and perhaps those of other clients (with your previous clients' permission).**

- 2. Take a moment to center yourself.**

Take a deep breath. Shake off any remaining thoughts of a previous exercise. Encourage your client to use his or imagination and to have fun with it. Invite your client to center themselves, take a deep breath, and even close their eyes for a few seconds.

- 3. Ask your client to imagine a future version of themselves fifteen years in the future.**

You can lead your client through a longer Future Self visualization, or ask them to simply imagine their Future Self walking into the cafe and having a seat with you. It's helpful to ask questions about:

- Fashion style
- Geographic location
- Description of home
- Occupation
- Typical day
- Favorite things to do

- Top values
- Message to your client
- Other notes

4. Ask your client to create a nickname for their Future Self.

5. Ask your client to create a “message to you” that is relevant to their Future Self.

You are looking to help your client gain value and take action based on the image of the Future Self. This question can bring up a lot of emotions. Often, Future Selves are very kind and say things like, “Keep working hard.” Sometimes they say, “Get your butt moving!” Whatever the message, it is a great time to use your coaching skills to bring your client to a deeper awareness of how they can take that message and turn it into present actions.

6. Complete the session with some coaching homework, and continue to check in with the Future Self throughout the next few weeks.

Sample Questions

Here are some examples of powerful questions about the Future Self. (Ideally, replace the words “Future Self” with the nickname that your client creates.)

- What has your Future Self learned that you have yet to learn?
- When you encounter resistance, what advice does your Future Self have for you?
- What is the biggest challenge that your Future Self encountered between who you are now and who you’ll be then? How did they overcome the challenge?
- What does your Future Self want your present self to know?
- What does your present self want your Future Self to know?
- What hopes and dreams does your Future Self have for you?
- What is the biggest change that you need to make in yourself in order to complete the transformation into your Future Self?

- What can you do today that your Future Self will thank you for?
- What is the most powerful perspective that your Future Self wants you to have?

15: Inner Critic

Chapter Overview

The Inner Critic tool gives coaches an exercise to specifically target negative and debilitating self-talk. Creating a new relationship with the Inner Critic empowers your client, especially if you co-design a plan to manage the negative self-talk when it shows up again.

The Inner Critic exercise pairs well with the Future Self exercise, and the two work well in the same session. If you do the Future Self first, then you can use that perspective to help with addressing the Inner Critic. If you decide to do the Inner Critic first, it can act as a way to clear negative self-talk out of the way, allowing the Future Self to fill the gap with a stellar, positive mental structure.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Empowering, Curious, Courageous, Confident

Skill-Check Questions

How will I help a client recognize negative self-talk as an Inner Critic and give it an identity?

What will it look like when my client has designed a new relationship between themselves and their Inner Critic?

Inner Critic

What

The *Inner Critic* exercise is a tool used to personify negative habits, negative self-talk, and negative perspectives in order to take on a new set of more useful habits. The exercise is similar to debugging a software program. It takes old, outdated patterns of thought and habit, exposes them, and playfully puts them aside so that the new software can run smoothly.

At the end of the *Inner Critic* process, you will create new ground rules for your client to interact with their Inner Critic.

The *Inner Critic* exercise has three components:

- **Describe negative self-talk**

Being able to describe the situation, as well as the content of the negative self-talk, is the foundation for this exercise.

- **Imagine the Inner Critic**

It takes imagination on the part of the client to personify the negative self-talk into some sort of character, usually a cartoon character or something that corresponds to the self-talk.

- **Manage focus**

Once the Inner Critic is personified, the next step is managing focus by building a habit of setting aside the Inner Critic in favor of something else.

Why

A. Creates distance between the negative self-talk and the client's inner dialogue.

The main reason the *Inner Critic* exercise works so well is that clients begin to recognize that this Inner Critic is not them. Instead, it is a vestige of a message that is no longer needed or useful. Once that message is isolated, the exercise creates distance between the client and their self-talk. This mental exercise increases the probability that the client will be able to dismiss that negative self-talk and focus on something more positive. Being able to separate the Inner Critic from who the client really is and what they really want is very powerful.

B. Creates realization of how easy it is to dismiss the negative self-talk.

Once clients have created a gap between themselves and their negative self-talk, it's easier to recognize that negative self-talk can be dismissed. Often, clients discover that they have to recover and dismiss the Inner Critic numerous times. The habit of recovery is an important part of the process, and helps clients understand that they are not their Inner Critic, and that they do have power over it. It is empowering for clients to learn that they have the choice either to listen to their Inner Critic, or to focus on something more useful, like their Future Self.

C. Is silly.

The exercise is a little silly and outside of what most clients have experienced. This silliness is one of the strengths of the exercise and why it works so well. Turning negative self-talk into a personified character brings an element of playfulness to the process. Such playfulness is useful in helping a client address issues that may be heavy or difficult.

How

1. Take a little time setting up the atmosphere of the coaching session.

Scope out the room, especially if you are in a coffee shop, to make sure that you are in a good spot for the coaching session to be relatively uninterrupted.

2. Take an extra minute to establish a great connection with your client.

Invite your client to stretch their imagination with this exercise. Invite them to have fun, and remind them to let go of judgment of themselves and of the exercise itself.

3. Explain the concept of the Inner Critic.

It can be helpful to use the analogy of a software update to explain how the Inner Critic is the personification of negative patterns so that your client can learn new habits.

4. Give a few examples of your own Inner Critic or the Inner Critic of other clients with whom you have worked.

[Make sure you obtain former clients' permission to share first, and do not reveal their name or other identifying characteristics.]

5. Ask your client about an area where things are not going so well, or a time during the day when they usually have a hard time.

Ask specifically, “What kinds of things do you say to yourself when you’re frustrated?” or “What kinds of things do you picture?” or “What do you say to yourself when things are not going well?”

6. Explore the negative self-talk and perspectives.

In your notes, write down the specific words your client is using.

7. Repeat the specific words used, and ask “What do you think about a person who [fill in the negative pattern your client used]?”

Keep following the thread down into the negative stuff until you feel you have reached the kernel of the negative pattern. You have found the bug, and now it is time to debug the system.

8. Ask your client, “If a little creature or being was to express that message to you, what would it look like?”

I often use the word “little” here on purpose to keep the Inner Critic tame. Sometimes, however, an Inner Critic is not little. Use your intuition and coaching skills to shift the internal message (that may be very close to your client’s negative self-concept) to a personified character that can be easily overcome. Take your time. This step is the crux of the *Inner Critic* work!

9. Once you have the beginnings of the Inner Critic sketched out, ask your client detailed questions to create a clear image of what the Inner Critic looks like and what it wants.

10. Ask your client to name this Inner Critic.

11. Keep the Inner Critic tame, small, and cartoonish.

Tame Inner Critics get the job done and avoid the danger of creating an intense negative mental construct. Cartoon characters, small creatures, or funny-dressed people work well for Inner Critics.

12. After you have filled out the description, ask your client to put their Inner Critic on the other side of the table, or perhaps further away, on the other side of the room.

You may need to encourage your client to use their imagination and have fun with the process. Put the Inner Critic underground or in a cave.

13. Facilitate a discussion between your client and their Inner Critic, exploring and creating a new way for your client to relate to their Inner Critic.

The following offers some guidelines for laying out the new ground rules for the Inner Critic.

Guidelines for New Ground Rules

Creating new ground rules for the Inner Critic is the software update. You are creating a new relationship between your client and their negative self-talk. Creating new ground rules is a great process with a few guidelines:

- The new rules give your client the power to dismiss their Inner Critic at will.
- After your client tells their Inner Critic the new ground rules, their Inner Critic may balk, argue, throw a fit, etc. The point is to envision how their Inner Critic will react when your client tells it that it is no longer in charge. It does not matter how the Inner Critic will react. Your client is not to engage, but rather simply to distract the Inner Critic with milk and cookies (or some other creative distraction), and get on with life!

- The new ground rules can be silly and fun.

Here are some powerful questions about the Inner Critic: (Ideally, replace the words “Inner Critic” with the nickname that your client creates.)

- When does your Inner Critic show up most often?
- What is its mission?
- What does your Inner Critic want for you?
- What do you want your Inner Critic to know?

16: Resilience

Chapter Overview

This chapter introduces a small handful of coaching strategies that are useful to have in a coach's toolbox. Helping clients craft or use metaphors is excellent for addressing a client's Being and Learning. Bird's-Eye View, Reframe, and Challenge are all quick coaching tools to help clients see themselves or the situation from a different perspective. It concludes with a look at Resilience Intelligence and pathways to bounce back after setbacks.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Empathetic, Empowering, Curious

Skill-Check Questions

How does Metaphor help address a client's Being and Learning?

When is Bird's-Eye View and Reframe best used?

Why is Challenge a helpful tool when a client is designing action steps?

What are the steps to take when using the coaching exercise Resilience Intelligence?

Metaphor

What

As a life coaching skill, using a metaphor creates an image in the client's mind that captures an important thought, making it more memorable and useful for them. An outstanding metaphor can help the client wrap their mind around something that may have been difficult for them to understand. It is also a useful tool when a coach tries to explain something difficult; a metaphor helps the client take that first step toward understanding. The three elements of using a metaphor are:

- **The object or action**

An understanding of the original object or action the client is describing.

- **Imagination**

Employing imagination to use something as a symbol for that original object.

- **Invitation to the client to make it their own**

Perhaps your client can think of a better metaphor for the issue at hand.

Why

A. Captures a thought that is difficult to express.

Metaphors can express a thought that is otherwise a challenge to express. Even if you or your client states a metaphor that doesn't quite capture the idea, it usually moves the conversation forward and makes it more likely that your client will land on a metaphor that works.

B. Is easy to remember.

Metaphors are often easy to remember, can carry deep meaning, and have the potential to stay with a client for years.

C. Uses the imagination.

Metaphors help clients flex their imagination and think about their situation differently. When a coach asks the client to make the metaphor fit them specifically, the coach is also opening up the possibility for the client to further enhance the metaphor and tap into their creativity.

How

1. Trust yourself as coach.

Confidence is half the challenge.

2. Create a metaphor using your creativity and intuition.

3. Invite your client to make it their own by asking if the metaphor fits, and if not, what they would change to make it fit.

4. Follow up with powerful questions to ensure that you are back in Level 2 listening.

Pay close attention to the pace of the coaching session.

Sample Questions about Metaphors:

- What metaphor would describe the transformation that you're experiencing right now?
- In your life's journey, what animal are you being now, and what animal do you hope to become?
- If your life was a book in three chapters, and chapter one describes where you were, chapter two describes where you are now, and chapter three describes where you're going, what would the title and summaries be of each chapter?

- What metaphor could represent the challenges you're facing?
- What metaphor could represent what it will be like when you achieve your goals?

Bird's Eye View

What

- **Big picture perspective**

The *Bird's Eye View* is the act of pulling the client's perspective up into the sky to look at the situation from further away. Essentially, it is a pre-determined, bigger-picture perspective.

- **Reset button**

Sometimes in a coaching session, a client can get caught up in the details of a story, or a certain perspective can sink in. The *Bird's Eye View* acts like a reset button during a coaching session, helping both you and your client take a step back to reevaluate the progress made and choose a new direction to take.

Why

A. Provides clarity.

Sometimes when a client gets so tied up in irrelevant details, pulling back and getting a larger-picture perspective shines a light on what is really important.

B. Speeds up the process.

The *Bird's Eye View* is a ready-made perspective. A coach or a client does not have to go through the whole process of generating different perspectives. The *Bird's Eye View* is ready to go out of the box.

C. Provides an opportunity to step back and reassess.

If a coach does not know where to go with the next question, asking your client to take a step back from the situation is an opportunity to shake up the perspective. The *Bird's Eye*

View is an effective change-up, and often provides insight into where to take the coaching session.

How

1. Recognize the value of the *Bird's Eye View*, and decide that now would be a great time to pull back and ask questions from a larger perspective.

The *Bird's Eye View* is especially useful if you feel the client is constricted or overly tied up in details.

2. Direct your client to take a Bird's Eye View.

“For a moment let's take a Bird's Eye View. If you were to look down on this situation from far up in the sky, what would occur to you?”

3. Follow up with questions that maintain the perspective:

- What does your life look like from such a distant perspective?
- What seems to be the most important aspect?
- What would you most like to change? Why?
- What are you most thankful for?
- What is most surprising from this perspective?

Reframing

What

- **Quick perspective shift**

Reframing is the art of expressing an event or a concept from a different perspective. The coach takes what a client may consider to be a setback, or something inconsequential, and provides a different—and sometimes radical—perspective shift.

- **Client's original perspective**

Reframing is useful when your client just said something that stands out to you as a limiting belief or a disempowering perspective. Being able to clearly identify the original perspective in your mind helps you flip your client's thinking when using reframing. Sometimes you can clearly define the original, limiting perspective, then reframe. Other times, you can just go straight for reframing. It depends on what you think would be most useful for your client.

- **Different twist**

A quick, direct statement that includes the perspective shift is the key to effective reframing. You use many of the same words your client just said, but with a different twist that invites the client to consider a new perspective.

- **Curiosity**

By asking what your client thinks of the reframed perspective, you ensure that you continue to partner with your client in co-creating the session, instead of trying to get your client to adopt the reframing simply because you think it would be useful.

Why

- **A. Provides a fresh perspective.**

Reframing is an important skill in life coaching because it helps clients get to a fresh perspective quickly. This influences their attitude, as well as possible actions. Because it offers a different point of view, reframing can almost immediately short-circuit a useless cycle of self-criticism.

B. Is elegant and efficient.

One of the reasons why reframing can be so effective is its efficiency in elegantly changing a perspective. This tool serves as a shortcut through the longer *Perspectives* exercise. Because it is shorter, it can easily be combined with other life coaching tools.

How

1. Start with the original idea that you think would be beneficial to reframe.

It could be a limiting belief. It could be an accomplishment underplayed. It could be an accomplishment overplayed. As a coach, something usually stands out to you as a moment or a statement that could be useful for your client.

2. Use a quick, direct statement that reframes what your client just said.

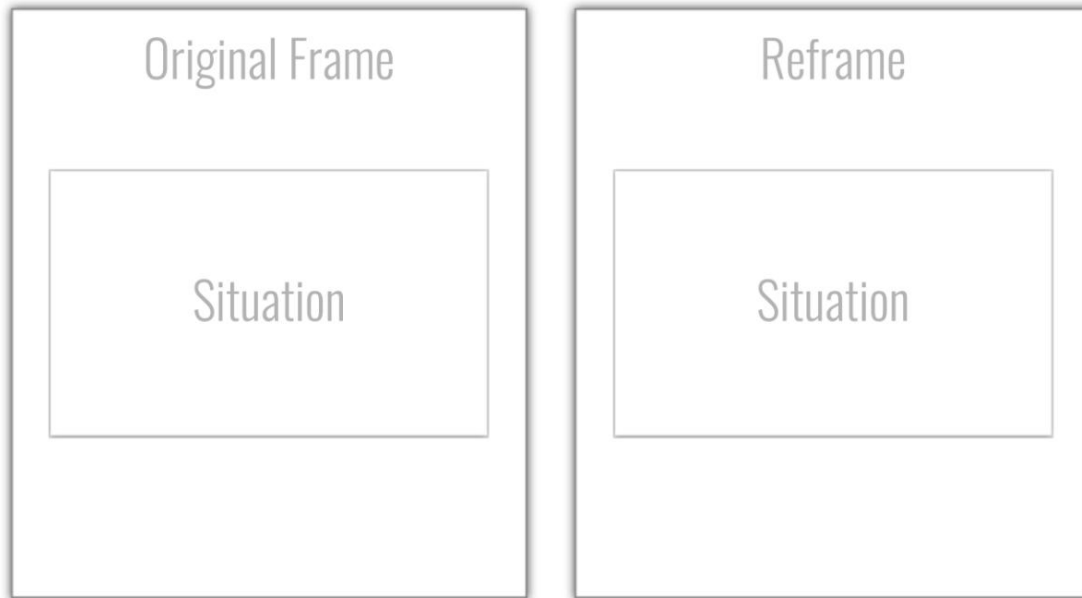
The key here is to be quick and direct.

3. If the insight and reframe is deeply meaningful to your client, you could opt to use the Reframe Chart that follows.

The chart has an area where you can write the old belief and situation, as well as an alternative, reframed belief and new situation.

4. Follow up with a simple question about your client's thoughts about the reframe.

Reframe



Challenge

What

Challenge is one of my favorite coaching tools. It is closely related to the championing tool, and the two used together can be extremely effective. However, both tools are best used sparingly. If used too often, life coaching sessions can feel like intimidating, to-do-list-generating, overwhelming-yet-cheering-me-on conversations. Used mindfully, *Challenge* is an elegant tool that busts limiting beliefs quickly and inspires clients to take bolder actions than previously considered. Elements of challenge:

- **Bold question**

A challenge is a question that boldly assumes your client can achieve something well beyond what they previously considered. For example, if your client has a goal of contacting three people in the next week to work on some community leadership practice, you could ask your client what it would be like to contact twenty people.

- **Busting previous boundaries**

Challenging is a process that busts previous boundaries. Helping your client dream and imagine what it would be like to push themselves further than ever before is an important element in an effective challenge. By focusing on your client's ability, as well as the assumptions your client is making, you can address their *Learning*, which leads to valuable insights.

- **Counter offer**

The bold question pushes the boundaries of what your client thought was possible. Sometimes clients accept the challenge at face value. However, clients often balk at the suggestion and come back with a flat out “no” or counter offer. The counter offer stage provides the chance to explore assumptions, details, well-designed actions, and the nitty-gritty of what it will take to accomplish the desired outcome.

- **Continued curiosity**

Whether or not your client takes the challenge is not as important as your continued curiosity as a coach. An effective challenge can have a profound effect on your client's thinking and emotions. It is helpful to not be attached to whether or not your client accepts your challenge, but rather to stay curious and in coaching mode. Let the tool do the work for you as your client wrestles with assumptions, dreams, and committing to ambitious accountabilities.

Why

A. Discovers boundaries.

Part of what makes *Challenge* effective is its ability to uncover the boundaries of what a client thinks is possible. Clients often respond to a challenge with disbelief, but their boundaries of what they think is possible have been expanded. Most clients reject a challenge at first. (If they do not, the challenge is not big enough.) In response, most clients respond with an action smaller than the challenge, but bolder than they would have originally considered.

B. Expands the brainstorming process.

A client may not accept the coach's original challenge, but may come up with an equally grand action.

C. Underscores the coach's belief in the client.

A challenge points to the coach's belief in the client's capabilities.

D. Pushes the client out of their comfort zone.

In order for clients to grow, they need to take risks and try new things.

E. Plays into a client's personality strengths.

A challenge is exciting, and depending on the client's core motivation type, a challenge can be a boom to their excitement level.

How

1. **While listening to your client describe the action they are going to take, think about what action could be four or five levels bigger.**
2. **Ask permission, or simply jump to your challenge.**
3. **Pay close attention to your client's reaction. Disbelief? Curiosity? Excitement?**
 Stay in Level 2 listening. Resist the temptation to go to Level 1 listening.
4. **Follow up by asking your client if they want to take a different action.**
 If your client does not want to meet the challenge, what steps are they excited to take?
5. **Ask powerful questions to explore any limiting beliefs or your client's assumptions about previous boundaries.**
6. **Help your client create a well-designed action and accountabilities.**

Resilience Intelligence

Resilience is derived from the Latin word *re-*, which means *back-and-forth*, and *silere*, which means *to dance*. Resilience is literally “dancing back.” As a metaphor of dancing, resilience is brilliant. We each need the challenges in our lives to bring out the best in us. As the metaphor suggests, being resilient is not about being so tough as to not bend, but rather a flexible, almost rhythmic experience of finding a way to bounce back from a setback hopefully with a little style.

This chapter explores the idea of learned resilience; an intelligence associated with being resilient. The concept emerged from hundreds of hours of coaching, seeing similar patterns emerge among people who have been successful, and recent development in theory.⁶² Some people seem to have tapped into a certain instinct that helps them thrive under stress, even welcome hard work and preparation. Such an instinct is rooted in the same mechanisms that promote survival: from playing, learning, and practicing to establishing relationships beyond immediate family.

As an intelligence, there appear to be better choices that lead to increased resilience.⁶³ The more likely someone is to choose the more resilient choice, the higher their resilience intelligence. This chapter offers a tour through the factors that contribute to resilience, such as internal mindsets, habits, and the strength of external support networks. Resilience is built by having belief in oneself, as well as by the health of the meaningful relationships in our lives. Like dancing, being resilient requires a good dance partner. If we are going to stretch the metaphor even more, having a great DJ and scene also helps in setting the energy of the room and finding a groove. It takes both an individual and a village to be resilient.

The following looks at the factors of resilience intelligence. The primary source comes from interviews with students who had a remarkable improvement in grades from one semester to the next, adults who bounced back from setbacks in career or financial challenges, and clients who achieved inspiring health goals, from lifestyle change to recovery from injury⁶⁴. Supporting sources include the Kübler-Ross model of the five stages of grief, Diane Coutu’s *How Resilience*

⁶² Richarson, G. E. 2002. The metatheory of resilience and resiliency.

⁶³ Fleming, J. & Ledogar, R. J. 2008. Resilience, an Evolving Concept: A Review of Literature Relevant to Aboriginal Research. *Primatisiwin* 6(2): pp. 7-23.

⁶⁴ Ryff, Carol D., & Singer, B. 2003. Thriving in the face of challenge: The integrative science of human resilience. In F. Kessel, P. L. Rosenfield, & N. B. Anderson (Eds.), *Expanding the boundaries of health and social science: Case studies in interdisciplinary innovation* (pp. 181-205). New York, NY, US: Oxford University Press.

Works, and a review of supporting research which also underlines the value of having supportive relationships.⁶⁵

Resilience Intelligence



⁶⁵ Coutu, Diane. 2002. How Resilience Works. *Harvard business review*. 80. 46-50, 52, 55 passim.

What

Resilience is as much a cycle as it is a series of individual traits and strength of external resources. The cycle starts with a challenge, with its mixture of acute and chronic aspects. In many ways, the degree of the challenge and its match or mismatch to an individual's skills or resources function like the psychology of flow. Too little challenge leads to boredom. Too much challenge leads to being overwhelmed. People often emerge stronger, more fulfilled, and more grateful for having dealt with a challenge. Indeed, it seems that having such challenges in life is a pathway to realizing more of our potential and pushes us to places we never considered possible. Human beings were designed to be resilient, and the following are the factors or choices that people can make to increase resilience.

Foundation of Resilience

These are the two most important elements of resilience intelligence developed before a big challenge arrives: 1) the strength & resources of a network, and 2) belief in the ability to meet the challenge.

- **Relationships: Strength & Resources of the Network**

One of the aspects that separates resilience from a simple character trait is the inclusion of relationships and available outside resources as a major factor of resilience.

Relationships that empower individuals and offer useful resources to meet challenges, help individuals be more resilient. When looking at happiness and fulfillment at a workplace, one of the major factors is the presence or absence of a meaningful, mentor relationship between a student and a professor or advisor on campus. Parents, relatives, church community, coworkers, friends, counselors, and coaches can all serve to provide support and boost resilience when needed. The key factors are strength, number of connections, and the quality of support offered. Support that cares, listens, and can provide tangible resources such as money, information, or help empowers individuals to be more resilient. The resilient choice is for people to seek and nurture supportive relationships and to ask for help early and often. The usual challenge posed to choosing to ask for help is a belief in rugged individualism and sometimes a cultural belief that asking for help means weakness or failure. However, especially in working towards wellness goals, support is essential to success. Key question: To what degree have you built your support network?

- **Belief in the ability to meet the challenge**

The higher degree of belief in one's ability to meet the challenge or eventually learn the skills to meet the challenge, the higher degree of resilience intelligence. It requires a mindset that sees most challenges as temporary and trusts that healing will happen, even through aspects of the challenge that are permanent and painful. The beauty of such optimism is that it initially does not need to be the optimism of the individual. For example, a coach, therapist, or friend might initially see the opportunity and be supportively optimistic. It helps to have someone in our lives who believes in us more than we do and sees our brilliance.⁶⁶ However, eventually such an optimistic view must be adopted by the individual for it to have a long-term effect on resilience intelligence. Such a belief to meet future challenges also relies on an individual's beliefs on potential and talent. Referencing Carol Dweck's work on growth- versus fixed-mindsets, the less resilient choice is believing that potential is fixed, leading to approaching each challenge as a test of talent.⁶⁷ The more resilient choice is seeing potential as a by-product of effort and approaching challenges as opportunities to learn and gain more skills. Key question: To what degree do you believe that you can work through and learn from a challenge?

Stages of Resilience

- **Acceptance: Willingness and ability to assess the full scope of the challenge**

Coutu, in *How Resilience Works*, starts by looking at an individual's ability to accurately assess the difficulty of the situation.⁶⁸ It takes tremendous courage to look at the full scope of a tough situation. In assessing a situation, a pessimistic perspective on the level of difficulty is the more resilient choice. The opposite is an unwillingness or inability to look at a challenge and to underestimate the resources or effort required to succeed. It seems that resilience picks up where the cycle of grief leaves off. After someone has gone through denial, anger, bargaining, and depression, they finally reach the stage of acceptance. With the first two elements of resilience established, acceptance marks the

⁶⁶ Mills RC, Shuford R. 2003. Health realization: An innate resiliency paradigm for school psychology. Hawaii International Conference On Education; January 7–10, 2003; Honolulu, Hawaii.

⁶⁷ Ryff, et al. 1998. Resilience in Adulthood and Later Life.

⁶⁸ Coutu, Diane. 2002. How Resilience Works. *Harvard business review*. 80. 46-50, 52, 55 passim.

first stage of working through a challenge. Key question: What is the full scope of the challenge?

- **Responsibility: Ownership of the future outcome of the situation**

Assigning blame is useful in gathering information to make decisions moving forward, but dwelling in regret or stewing in revenge drains precious resources and creates obstacles to resilience. This factor does not discount the pain and hurt that victims can feel. Instead, it points to an aspect of humanity able to rise above horrific actions or situations and to transcend victimhood to take on the responsibility for future actions. Healing from the past and taking ownership of future outcomes empowers an individual to use more of their energy to solve the current problem. Building on concepts from Positive Psychology such as *Broaden and Build*, such a perspective leads to being proactive, being more creative, and looking to add more resources beyond what is immediately offered. Responsibility is the fourth element of resilience and the second major step towards overcoming a challenge. Key question: To what degree are you taking responsibility for the future outcome?

- **Determination: Where there is a why, there is a way**

The hard truth: not every task or goal is worth the effort to grit it out. Sometimes the wiser choice is to find something else to pursue. Doing something “just because” or without much thought about other options or choices, does not lead to resilience. However, if the goal is worth it, taking the extra step of having an articulated purpose for a worthwhile goal is one of the factors of resilience intelligence. Intrinsic or empathetic motivations (doing something for the sake of someone else or for a larger cause) are usually more lasting than conditional motivation (doing something for the sake of a reward). The quality of the motivation is determined by its ability to provide an empowering perspective and spark action even in the face of setbacks. Determination to keep moving forward marks the third stage becoming successfully resilient. Key questions: Why are you pursuing this goal? How compelling is that reason when things do not go your way?

The Path of Recovery

- **Troubleshooting: Creativity matters and feedback is gold**

The next stage is marked by troubleshooting. People in this stage start gathering more information and resources, trying out ideas, and welcoming feedback. Creativity and persistence to keep trying out new ideas are hallmarks of this stage. The more an individual can be creative and develop shorter, more frequent feedback loops, the higher the resilience intelligence. For example, imagine someone trying to recover from injury. The more feedback gathered – from designing several measures during a therapy session to measuring results daily – the higher the chance of using that information to make better future decisions. The less resilient choice is to procrastinate and put off action, or do it once, then stop if the feedback is negative. The more resilient choice is to set up a series of mini-experiments to learn from each trial run, expecting to receive information on how to make or do it better. Troubleshooting and creativity mark the fourth stage of resilience. Key question: To what degree do you gather feedback to try out new ideas?

- **Gratitude: What doesn't kill you makes you stronger**

The final stage of resilience is the growth and adaptation of a skill set to meet the challenge accompanied with a sense of relief, happiness, and gratitude. The setbacks experienced in life develop some of the best qualities and help push potential further than previously thought possible. The learning that occurred and stamina developed to meet challenges translates to a deeper belief in one's abilities to meet future setbacks.

The whole cycle feeds an individual's sense of self and ability, and creates a cycle of ever-increasing skill sets designed to take on future problems.

Why

A. Everyone can build resilience intelligence.

Human beings are naturally resilient. Knowing what factors actually help build resilience gives people a better awareness of which to focus on and where someone is at in steps of resilience. If there is a step missing, it is often difficult to get to the next stage in the process.

B. Focused questions.

The stages of resilience point out different aspects that you as a coach can address with your client to explore which stage your client is currently in and which stage is coming next.

C. Importance of asking for help.

So many times, people do not reach out for help or use the resources available due to a mistaken belief in rugged individuality, embarrassment, or misplaced pride. Building relationships and tapping networks for resources is one of the most useful actions to take both before and during a setback.

D. Frames setbacks as temporary.

By helping clients recognize failure or procrastination as part of a larger structure included in troubleshooting, they avoid the trap of believing they are somehow flawed. Clients feel prepared to keep moving forward, rather than dwelling on past setbacks.

E. Builds plans based on past success.

The magic of the session comes from helping your client develop a plan for the future in the face of a challenge. Helping your client recover from procrastination or lack of action allows them to develop more resilience and the habit of embracing harder and harder challenges, thus building greater capacity to bounce back from setbacks.

How

1. Ask your client to look at a health, fitness, or any other goal they want to work on.

Use the Resilience Chart to help your client create a visual of their resilience structure.

2. Use the resilience intelligence chart as you would an assessment wheel.

Go through the seven elements in the section above to create an initial assessment. Have your client rate themselves on a scale of 1 to 10 in each of the areas of the chart. Here is each area's description:

- **Strength of Network (Asking for Help).** The strength of community asks your client to assess how supportive others are in their life. It's your client's ability to build a strong support network and gather the resources necessary to withstand setbacks.

Key question: To what degree have you built your support network?

- **Belief in Ability to Meet the Challenge (Growth Mindset).** Whether you think you can be successful or not has a huge impact on motivation, stress levels, and ability to get into flow. This area assesses what your client thinks about their ability to be successful.

Key question: What do you believe about how you can work through and learn from a challenge?

- **Clarity and Acceptance of the Challenge.** While being optimistic about belief in ability is helpful, being accurate or even pessimistic in how difficult the challenge is, is also crucial to resilience. Over optimism can derail projects and lead to disappointment. This area asks your client to look at their willingness to accept that the project is going to be challenging, and to accept the challenge as part of the deal. Thinking that things will be a "piece of cake" is the antithesis of the kind of thinking necessary to be resilient over the long-run.

Key question: What is the full scope of the challenge?

- **Ownership (Responsibility for the Outcome).** Blaming others or the situation short circuits resilience. Taking responsibility even for things outside your complete control leads to more resilience. It's the mindset of accepting and preparing a plan to address the situation when things go wrong.

Key question: How are you taking responsibility for the future outcome?

- **Determination and Clarity of Purpose.** The quality of your purpose effects the quality of your motivation and ability to keep moving when the going gets tough. This area addresses your client's clarity of purpose.

Key question: Why are you pursuing this goal? How compelling is that reason when things do not go your way?

- **Troubleshooting and Gathering Feedback.** This section looks at your client's habit of gathering feedback and looking at the data available to make better decisions. Gathering feedback helps your client adjust and develop a stronger skillset.

Key question: How will you gather feedback to try out new ideas?

- **Gratitude for the Learning and Stamina.** This final section is about being grateful even for the challenges and setbacks. When clients can get into a space of feeling grateful even when things go wrong, your client is demonstrating a high degree of resilience.

Key question: To what degree are you grateful even when things don't go your way?

3. **After exploring the points above in the context of your client's topic, ask your client to shade in the percentage of area that corresponds to your client's 1 to 10 rating.**
4. **Just as you would with any other assessment wheel, explore what your client is learning from looking at themselves with this tool.**
5. **Use the tool and the insights as a launching pad to refine the session agenda or explore other areas relating to resilience.**

17: Setting Reminders

Chapter Overview

This chapter looks at a coaching exercise that helps clients lock in Learning and design a way to remember crucial insights between coaching sessions. It also addresses two coaching tools: Paraphrasing and Championing.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Empowering, Curious, Courageous, Confident

Skill-Check Questions

What are the steps to Setting a Reminder with a client?

What helps make association work?

When are Paraphrase and Championing best used as coaching tools?

Setting Reminders

Setting reminders leverages the systems and structures philosophy and applies it to the inner world of thought and emotion. A successful reminder is a structure to help your client recover quickly and, for example, choose a powerful perspective or a process value to honor. The original name of this exercise was “Dropping Anchors”, as a nod to the metaphor of a ship dropping its anchor on shore close to where it wanted to stay. With this exercise, you help your client associate a body movement, specific word, image, color—or something a little unusual so that it’s remembered easily—with a chosen perspective that your client will use at a crucial decision point. By creating this association, you have helped your client create a powerful reminder that calls forth internal resources when most needed.

What

- **Desired mindset**

The desired mindset is the concept, empowering belief, or perspective that your client wants to be able to bring to mind when needed.

- **Reminder**

The most useful reminders are typically simple, such as applying a little bit of pressure on your hand, or a subtle hand movement.

- **Association**

Setting reminders involves asking your client to associate the desired mindset with a reminder, such as the aforementioned pressure on the hand, or a subtle hand movement. To help your client associate the mindset and the reminder, you will lead your client through exploring past memories when the mindset was present, as well as imagine future situations when your client will use the reminder to evoke the mindset.

- **Break state**

The purpose of the break state is to get your client thinking of something completely unrelated to the desired mindset or reminder. You will use a break state between association and testing the reminder to see if the association was successful.

- **Testing the reminder**

Testing the reminder is asking your client to do the hand motion to determine the degree to which it brings back the desired mindset. (Most times when clients do their hand motion, they smile if the association worked.) In association, you ask your client to first think of the desired mindset, then do the hand motion. Testing and using the reminder works in the opposite direction. If it works, the hand motion will evoke the desired mindset.

Why

A. Provides clarity and value.

The first step, clarifying the specific concept of which your client wants to be reminded, provides value for your client. It helps create a focal point for the next two weeks and beyond.

B. Stimulates conscious association.

Simple Pavlovian association is a powerful force in human (and animal) nature. Most of the time, association happens unconsciously. In this exercise, we make the associative process conscious. Like all association, the process works best if it is used often and reinforced.

How

1. **Identify a perspective of which your client needs to be reminded when things get hard, OR a future point in time when such a perspective will be most needed.**
2. **Enrich that perspective by asking questions like:**

“If your perspective had a feeling, what would that feeling be?” “If it had a color, what color would it be?” “Remember a time in your life when you’ve felt this perspective. What was going on?” “In this perspective, what kinds of things do you say to yourself?” Use your coaching skills to draw out the perspective and make it more vivid for your client.

3. Make up some word, image, or body movement to associate with the perspective.

One favorite is applying a little pressure on the part of the hand between the thumb and index finger.

4. Invite your client to relax as you help them associate the chosen perspective, with all of its richness, to the specific word, image, or body movement.

You can combine associations to link to the chosen perspective.

5. Ask your client to describe the perspective.

Just at the peak of emotion, or when you sense your client is really in the perspective, ask them to make the association (e.g. apply a little more pressure to the hand, or think of the word or color). Whatever the reminder is, invoke it a few times while your client talks about the perspective and the desired experience.

6. Repeat the previous step a few times.

Repeat the reminder as you lead your client through visualizations, associating the reminder with the perspective.

7. Test the reminder.

Explain that you are going to ask your client about something completely different, and then invoke the reminder to see if the reminder is linked to the perspective. (This is called a “break state.”) Ask your client to think about something completely different, like their address or ZIP code.

8. Ask your client to use the reminder.

See if it brings back all the other images and sensations of the chosen perspective, or whatever your client wanted to remember. If it does, good. You've successfully set a reminder! If it doesn't, repeat the process. Sometimes you'll go through the process two or three times. It's perfectly fine and normal to have to repeat the process a few times.

9. Ask your clients to use their reminder once a day for the next week or two.

The more they use the reminder, the stronger and more useful it becomes.

Paraphrase

What

- **Reflection**

Paraphrase is repeating back, either word-for-word or slightly changing, the words your client just used for the sake of your client's reflection. Reflection allows your client to think more deeply about what they just said.

- **Brief**

This tool is most effective when the paraphrase is brief, not a long rehashing of a story or a point for the benefit of the coach's understanding. Your understanding as a coach is simply not that important. What is important is continuing to ask powerful questions that get your client to consider new ideas and break new ground. Frequent, long paraphrasing mimics counseling and gets in the way of truly partnering with your client in a coaching session. The key to effective paraphrasing is keeping it brief.

- **Pause**

An important aspect of paraphrasing is pausing afterward to allow your client time to reflect and consider what you just said. A few words of reflection and paraphrase followed by a mindful pause can have a profound effect on a client.

Why

A. Shifts the perspective.

One of the most effective uses of paraphrase is saying the words from a slightly different point of view. By using different words, a coach shifts the perspective so that the client can see things a little differently. That difference may lead to a shift in the client's thinking, which can eventually lead to great insights. Paraphrase is one method of reframing a situation.

B. Provides clarity.

Paraphrase is also effective because it gives the client a chance to clarify exactly what they are thinking. The client's words are the most important. By paraphrasing, a coach offers the opportunity for the client to either take the coach's words and run with them, or change them to words that the client can fully own. Paraphrase also gives the coach the opportunity to clearly understand what the client is saying.

How

1. **Listen carefully to what your client is saying. Pick up on individual words, but also comprehend the larger meaning.**
2. **With a mixture of intuition and curiosity, rephrase what your client has said, adding a slight reframe or a subtle shift in the point of view.**
3. **Be open to your client paraphrasing your paraphrase.**

It's only fair. At its best, paraphrase opens a new direction of exploration for you and your client.

Championing

What

To “reach one’s full potential” may be overused in life, but the meaning is clear: clients have talents and possibilities for the future that far outpace their current idea of what they think is possible. As a coach, to *Champion* is to help the client close the gap between their current situation and the reality that exists just beyond the next push.

- **Direct statement**

Championing a client means that the coach is directing attention to a client’s potential, especially when the client is stuck in self-doubt.

- **A resourceful perspective**

Working with your client from the perspective that they have all the inner and outer resources to accomplish their desired outcomes is a fundamental part of being an effective life coach. By adopting such a powerful perspective as a coach, your client implicitly (or explicitly if you speak to it when *Designing the Alliance*) adopts the same perspective. Championing serves as a reminder of the resourceful perspective.

- **A coach’s trust**

Championing also involves you completely trusting your client’s ability to accomplish the chosen task. Your trust as a coach is an important part of the recipe of what makes championing effective.

Why

A. Acts like a mirror.

Sometimes a client has a hard time seeing themselves and their potential that is just around the corner. Showing the client how they appear to others, and their capabilities, is a priceless tool.

B. Exposes limiting beliefs.

In the process of working through several action steps, a client often confronts some limiting beliefs. A coach must pay close attention to the response that the client provides after being championed. Sometimes clients respond with a limiting belief, which is a wonderful opportunity for exposing that limiting belief to help the client move forward.

C. Serves as a reminder.

At its best, championing acts as a reminder for the client that they can achieve their desired outcomes. Instead of facing one big, insurmountable mountain, the coach helps the client see that the situation is a series of small, but surmountable, hills of challenging (but totally doable) tasks.

D. Feels great.

Championing feels great. Having someone champion us feels good. It reminds the client that the coach is someone who believes in them.

How

The best championing comes from a genuine vision of who your client is and what their capabilities are. *Championing* is a tool that adds strength to your coaching. Powerful questions, risk taking, challenging, and other coaching tools really stretch and push your client. *Championing* gives your client the reassurance that they can achieve their desired outcomes.

1. Determine where your client needs to go.

Recognize that there is a gap in your client's beliefs about themselves, their self-image, and their perception of their personal abilities.

2. Gain clarity on the action steps that your client is willing—and really wants—to take.**3. Share with your client the strengths, positive characteristics, and capabilities you observe in them.**

4. Pay close attention to your client's reaction.

Listen for any limiting beliefs or evidence that your words resonated with them.

5. Ask a powerful question, and continue on with the coaching.

Sleep & Meditation

Optimal wellness requires high quality rest and recovery. Stressors in the modern era pose a significant challenge to health and wellness. From lightbulbs to computer screens, flashes of light create havoc on serotonin and dopamine.⁶⁹ Sugar is readily available at all hours of the day and night. We develop habits of watching screens while eating yummy ice-cream and delicious popcorn, which creates an imbalance in hormone levels and leads to challenges for the body to rejuvenate. The human body was designed to go to sleep when the sun goes down and to rise when the sun comes up. As a wellness coach, addressing sleep, especially the nightly routine and sleep schedule, helps clients reach optimal wellness.

Going to bed happy, fulfilled, knowing that the day went well, and tomorrow could be even better, is a blissful, blessed feeling. Good sleep is essential for optimal performance.⁷⁰ Sleep experts recommend at least seven hours each night, but eight to nine seem to be the ideal. The goal of wellness coaching is to increase the quality of sleep by coaching around those factors your client can easily control. The following are elements you can address with your client.

In addition to sleep, prayer and meditation have also been shown to reduce stress and increase happiness. Meditation is one of the few practices shown to have a robust positive impact on personal affect while decreasing anxiety.⁷¹ Meditation has a long tradition in many religions,

⁶⁹ Interesting research on this topic can be found in the following two articles. The first looks at the impact eReaders have on rest, and the second explores some very serious research on the connection between cancer and shift-work.

- Biological Sciences - Physiology: Anne-Marie Chang, Daniel Aeschbach, Jeanne F. Duffy, and Charles A. Czeisler. Evening use of light-emitting eReaders negatively affects sleep, circadian timing, and next-morning alertness. PNAS 2015 112 (4) 1232-1237; published ahead of print December 22, 2014, doi:10.1073/pnas.1418490112
- Davis, S. & Mirick, D.K. Circadian Disruption, Shift Work and the Risk of Cancer: A Summary of the Evidence and Studies in Seattle. (2006) 17: 539. doi:10.1007/s10552-005-9010-9

⁷⁰ Russell Foster is a leading spokesperson on the topic of rest. His popular ted talk can be found here: Foster, Russell. "Why do we sleep." TEDGlobal 2013. June 2013, https://www.ted.com/talks/russell_foster_why_do_we_sleep.

⁷¹ For insight on the positive change that the brain experiences when trained in meditation practices and the other benefits of meditation, see the following articles:

- Dentico, Daniela et al. "Short Meditation Trainings Enhance Non-REM Sleep Low-Frequency Oscillations." Ed. Vladyslav Vyazovskiy. PLoS ONE 11.2 (2016): e0148961.
- Keyworth, Chris et al. "A Mixed-Methods Pilot Study of the Acceptability and Effectiveness of a Brief Meditation and Mindfulness Intervention for People with Diabetes and Coronary Heart Disease." Behavioral Medicine 40.2 (2014): 53-64.
- Zeidan, Fadel et al. "Neural Correlates of Mindfulness Meditation-Related Anxiety Relief." Social Cognitive and Affective Neuroscience 9.6 (2014): 751-759.

from a path to enlightenment to contemplative prayer. The practice has recently vaulted to one of the most studied activities in positive psychology due to scientists' ability to measure brain waves when people meditate. When meditating, the brain mimics the same relaxed alpha and theta waves associated with the beginning and middle stages of sleep. The connection between sleep and meditation is undeniable and this section will look at the elements of sleep and meditation that you can address as a wellness coach to help your clients get more restful sleep and spark or enhance a prayer or meditation practice.

What: Elements of Sleep

- **Bedtime routine**

The routine could include a conscious period of winding down, reviewing the day's events with gratitude, finding a perspective to address critical dialogue, if present, and visualizing the events for the next day.

- **Nutrition**

A client's nutrition can have a dramatic impact on their ability to rest. Stimulants (e.g. caffeine, sugar, carbohydrates) and depressants (e.g. alcohol) can play important roles in the body's ability to prepare for restful sleep. For instance, caffeine can take 8-12 hours to work its way out of the body's system completely. The general guideline is to limit the role of stimulants or depressants in the hours before bedtime while increasing hydration.

- **Environment**

Not all bedrooms are created equal. Human beings are not designed to sleep with artificial light. Eliminating light leaks with blackout shades, shutting down electronics, and turning off night lights can make a dramatic difference in sleep quality over time.

- **Wakeup routine**

An often-overlooked quality of sleep is the journey from sleep to waking up. The first thirty minutes of waking up is a leverage point for the morning often not consciously designed.

What: Elements of Meditation

- **Sitting to walking**

Meditation requires a sustained position. People can achieve meditative-like states while walking, hiking, or trail running, but simply sitting still is the most common position. Whether in a full lotus with hands held in mudras or sitting in a chair with hands folded in the lap, the common element is sitting on a cushion or chair.

- **Exploratory versus focused**

Meditation can range from an awareness of breathing and mindfulness of whatever thought comes and goes in the mind to an effortful focus on a specific object, theme, such as compassion, or love, or breathing.

- **Length of time**

From one minute to a full hour, the length of time for meditation can vary widely. Common lengths for a sustained daily practice that has an impact on personal affect is twenty minutes.

- **Frequency**

Daily meditation is recommended. However, monks and other extreme meditators will have meditation sessions several times per day.

- **Transition out of meditation**

Similar to a wakeup routine, having some plan to move from meditation to normal activity helps enhance the benefits of meditation.

Why Sleep and Meditation Matter

A. High quality rest increases bioavailable nutrients.

Individuals who design more effective means of replenishing resources show higher resilience intelligence and recover from setbacks more efficiently. Since the

physiological state of a person impacts the bioavailability of resources they consume, rest is an important part of making sure what is consumed provides the maximum benefit. High quality sleep and consistent meditation lead to deep states of relaxation, which allows the body's natural repairing processes to operate effectively.

B. Retreat to advance.

In addition to the biological nutrients being replenished, taking time for rest and recovery puts the focus naturally on the process and the journey. By addressing the need for rejuvenation with healthy, nutrient-balancing practices, it is easier to avoid procrastination designed to merely distract from stress rather than helping replenish nutrients. (Think binge watching Netflix or gaming versus getting to sleep those extra hours.)

C. Extra energy helps prompt an upward cycle.

Great sleep and relaxing meditation aid mental clarity and emotional energy. Such extra energy makes it easier to be more productive, follow through on challenging tasks, and stay disciplined to rest and recovery routines. The result is a positive upward spiral of effort, results, and rejuvenation.

How: The Sleep Wheel

The Sleep Wheel is a tool similar to the Wellness Wheel with different topics that relate to aspects of sleep. Just as with the Wheel of Life or the Wellness Wheel, you can ask your client to rate their level of satisfaction on a scale of one to ten with each of the categories that follow.

1. Hours of Sleep.

What is the number of average hours your client sleeps each night?

2. Bedtime Routine.

How well does your client's bedtime routine create a sense of calm and peace as they prepare to sleep?

3. Gratitude.

How well does your client actively engage in gratitude before bedtime?

4. Limit Negative Dialogue.

How well does your client limit negative dialogue at bedtime?

5. Consistent Bedtime.

How consistent is your client on falling asleep at the same time each night?

6. Manage food and drink.

How much of a positive impact does your client's food and drink consumption before bedtime have on their sleep? (Generally speaking, the more caffeine, alcohol, or sugar and carbohydrates, the lower the number here.)

7. Bedroom environment.

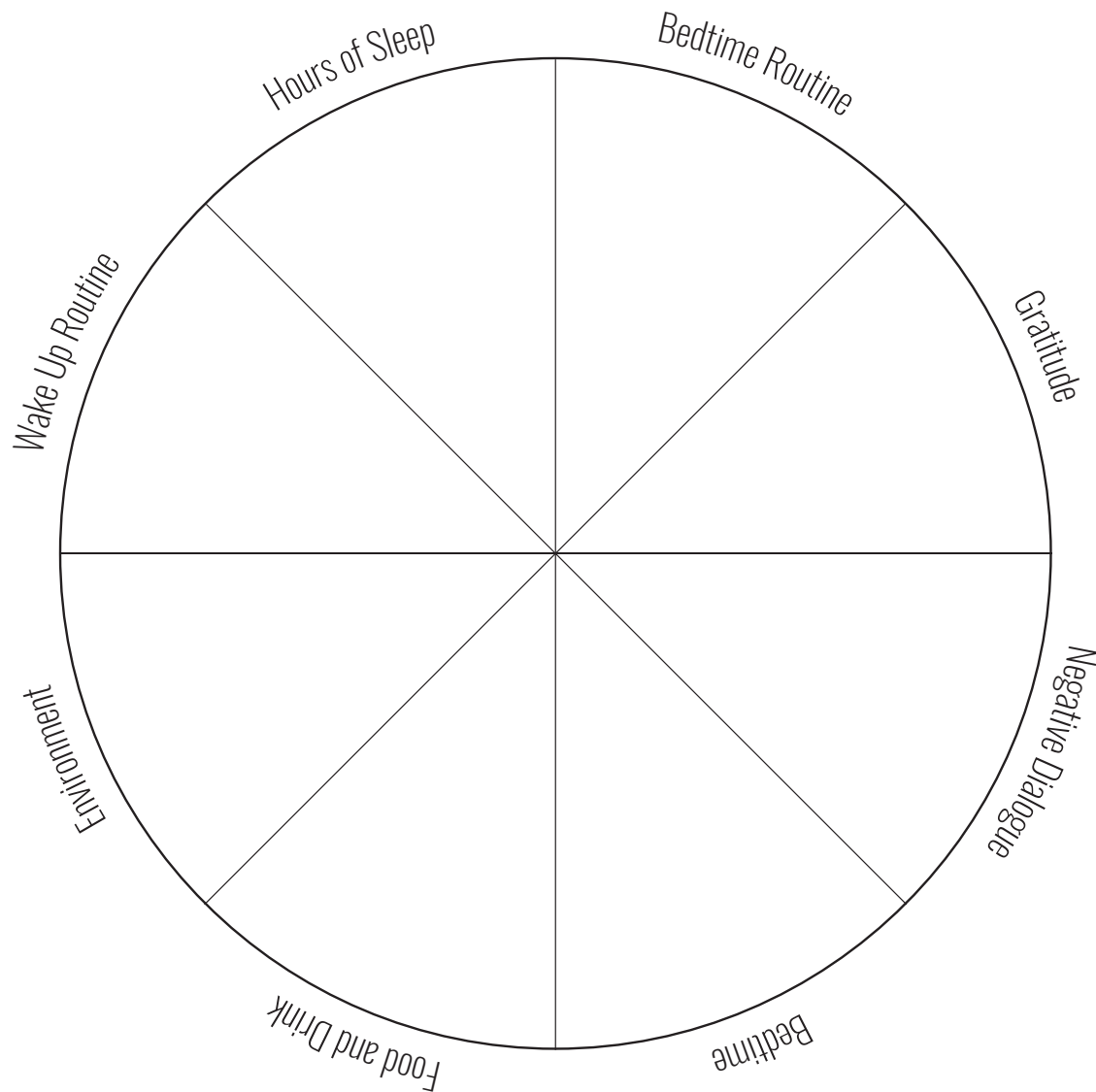
How well does your client limit artificial light? How comfortable does your client find their bed?

8. Wake up routine.

How happy is your client with their first hour after waking up?

Each of these categories contain a bit of a suggestion of a healthy habit. For example, asking a client to rate level of satisfaction with a consistent bedtime implies that a consistent bedtime is good. It is. However, a client might have a wildly inconsistent bedtime, but be totally satisfied and sleep great. Level of satisfaction does not mean level of existence. Your job as a coach is to help your client explore each of these areas to see which direction and what action steps your client wants to put in place.

Sleep Wheel



How: Meditation and Prayer

Meditation is widely accepted as one of the most useful mental and emotional practices human beings can do. Yet, so few people have an active meditation or prayer practice that lasts longer than twenty minutes a day. Exploring your client's experience with meditation and contemplative prayer is a useful tool for clients to consider taking conscious, dedicated time to mindfulness and connection.

Establishing a meditation or prayer practice is similar to creating or emphasizing any new habit. These are the elements that are helpful for you to address with your client:

1. Consistent time of day and predetermined length of time.

Having a predetermined schedule helps the mind focus on the meditation or prayer rather than decide on a new schedule each day.

2. Accompanying ceremony.

This could be reading the Bible or other religious or inspirational text and determining how much prayer will be a focus during the time of meditation.

3. Integration into normal routines.

There may be ways for the client to simply connect their meditation with other habits in a larger routine, such as having this time just before or after drinking a cup of green tea in the morning.

18: Future Pacing

Chapter Overview

Imagination is a powerful tool to help clients visualize the key action steps they need to take during a coaching session to increase their insights and to follow through on their planned actions between coaching sessions. This chapter also explores the Jet Lag exercise to help clients apply an insight to all other areas of their lives.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Curiosity, Inspiring

Skill-Check Questions

What are the steps to the Future Pacing exercise?

How does the metaphor of jet lag apply to an insight and to the client's life?

Future Pacing

The idea behind *Future Pacing* is to create a vision of the future when your client makes that new and different choice. Hanging out with the daydream and adding more detail to make it real have the potential to evoke more emotion instead of simply completing an intellectual exercise of integrating a value into a system. Imagining into this space significantly boosts the chances that your client will follow through with action.

Your job is to guide your client in visualizing what life will be like when they honor their values and follow through with action. The key is to help your client imagine what life will be like once they have made a choice and achieved a desired outcome.

What

- **Visualizing a specific action**

From the *Values* exercise, your client will have a specific action in mind that they will want to take. *Future Pacing* requires that your client visualize what it will be like to follow through on that action based on a newly-clarified value.

- **Next day to two-week timeline**

One of the major differences between *Future Pacing* and *Future Self* is the timeline associated with each exercise. *Future Pacing* usually focuses on an action coming up quickly, either the next day or in the next week or two. In contrast, *Future Self* is a visualization exercise that is focused on jumping forward to the next decade.

Why

A. Primes followthrough.

Future Pacing makes following through on an action more likely because it primes your client to follow through on agreed action steps.

B. Practices visualization.

From Olympic athletes in the 1980s to positive psychologists in the 2010s, visualization has been proven to help people tap into internal resources to accomplish desired outcomes.

How

1. Use the *Making Decisions* exercise to pinpoint an agreed-upon time when your client will choose to follow through on a well-designed action based on their values.

2. Guide your client to imagine that future point in time.

3. Ask your client, “What is it like to have made that choice?”

4. Explore the actual process of making that decision.

Ask questions like: “What’s easy about the choice?”, “What’s hard about making that choice?”, and “What’s exciting about trying something different?”

5. Go slowly through the vision, and help your client step into the reality of what making that decision will feel like.

“What does it feel like the moment before you strap on your running shoes?” “What do you notice the moment after you accomplish your action?”

6. Ask what structures or additional systems your client needs to support their well-designed actions and values.

Jet Lag

When you approach the halfway mark and the conclusion of the coaching relationship with your clients, it may be a good time to look at the *Wheel of Life* again with these newer tools. *Self-Alignment* is simply using the insights gained over past sessions to close the gap between your client's recent personal growth and any old habits and beliefs that no longer fit. *Self-Alignment* uses *Values* as a tool to explore each aspect of your client's life with questions such as: "How would you apply this new value to this area of life also?" It's a powerful question that shortens the time it takes for an insight to percolate through all areas of your client's life.

Jet Lag happens when a client has an insight or a deeper understanding of themselves that moves them further along the path of personal growth quicker than if they would have received this insight at a later time or not at all. It's similar to what happens when you fly over a handful (or more) of time zones. The actual (local) time has accelerated, and it takes a few days for your biological clock to catch up. Recognizing such a phenomenon in a life coaching program helps cut down the time it takes your client to catch up with their insights.

What

- **Original insight**

Identify a *Learning*, perspective, or value the client has experienced through the coaching process. This insight could have come through a specific tool, powerful questioning, the Coaching to Flourish model, etc.

- **Wheel of Life**

In addressing the other areas or topics in your client's life, they have the opportunity to create a visual representation of the impact an insight can have.

- **New insights and action steps**

The *Jet Lag* exercise leads to new insights for your client, and an opportunity for you to design new action steps in other areas based on the tool.

Why

A. Updates old values.

In a program designed for personal growth, newly-identified values will often clash with outdated values. For example, reading a book to learn something new clashes with the old value of escaping into television. The metaphor of *Jet Lag* helps clients see how the old value was useful at one point (for example, as a way to temporarily relieve stress), but is now less useful than the new value.

B. Takes advantage of growth.

Like the metaphor of *Jet Lag* suggests, your client has grown in some area. Part of the journey of becoming an expert coach is being able to apply an insight from one area of a client's life to other areas. This exercise walks your client through that experience.

How

1. Briefly explain the metaphor of *Jet Lag*, and how it's a natural part of the life coaching process.

2. Invite your client to complete another *Wheel of Life*.

This time, however, instead of looking at each area and assessing current levels of satisfaction, invite your client to apply their newly-created value or *Signature Perspective* to other areas in the Wheel. Ask the question, "What would be different about your approach to [name the area] if you applied [fill in the trademark value or *Signature Perspective*]?"

3. Explore what would be different.

This exercise creates some great coaching homework! Be sure to follow up in future sessions, and return to this exercise as needed. Personal growth is a circular, not linear, process.

19: Powerful Relationships

Chapter Overview

The quality of the relationships around us largely determine our effectiveness and happiness. This chapter explores the deep impact assumptions have in relationships, as well as two exercises designed to help clients arrive at insights to create peaceful, effective relationships.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Empathy, Curiosity, Courage

Skill-Check Questions

*How does exploring the Powerful Relationship exercise empower clients, both in putting in effort to improve the relationship and in creating strong relationship boundaries?
How can I use the Empathy exercise to coach for insights?*

Powerful Relationships

What

Powerful Relationships is an exercise that uses life coaching principles to help clients understand the assumptions that they are making in their relationships so they can create well-designed actions to improve their relationships with other people. It is a chance for a coach to help the client proactively. It is important for clients to be reminded that they cannot control the thoughts, habits, and actions of others; they can only control their own. However, when clients learn to manage their own thoughts and assumptions about others, this can greatly influence a relationship.

The three elements of creating *Powerful Relationships* are:

- **The client's choice**

In life coaching, the client drives the agenda. If a client wants to focus on a specific relationship, this is an outstanding tool to do so. Often, clients want to have a better relationship with someone, but at the same time they also want to protect themselves from being hurt. The client has the choice to change their assumptions while still maintaining the bubble of protection. In short, this exercise only works if the client is willing to take personal responsibility for their role in the relationship, and if the client *chooses* to put in the effort to improve it.

- **The assumptions that the client makes about people**

The exercise shows how simple—yet challenging—it can be to change assumptions about people. The exercise helps the client focus on their specific role in creating the relationship.

- **Empathy**

This exercise also accounts for the inherent nature of relationships, and that the client is only one part of the equation. The exercise helps the client understand what it is like from the other person's point of view, focuses on building empathy, and uncovers resources to manage the relationship.

Why

A. Gives the client a powerful choice to improve a relationship (or not).

Helping the client focus on improving a relationship is a key to helping them look at specific areas in life.

B. Focuses on the client's role.

Just like a well-designed action, powerful relationships only focus on what the client can specifically control. This exercise points out that the client can only control their own assumptions and actions. Focusing on those two things is the best way for the client to improve a relationship.

C. Asks clients to take a leap and think empathetically.

Essentially, the coach is asking the client to think from the point of view of the other person in the relationship. It is similar to Level 2 listening, and helps clients understand how they are being viewed by the other person. That leap of empathy helps so much to improve the situation, and is often the key for this exercise to be successful.

D. Aligns assumptions.

People naturally want their assumptions to be proven true because they like to think that they can predict the future and therefore have control over it. This exercise helps clients align their assumptions with the other person's actions and what the other person might really want.

How

1. Use the *Powerful Relationships* charts.

One chart is for a negative cycle; the other is for a positive cycle.

2. If you're seeing a relationship issue pop up a lot in coaching, invite your client to further explore what is not working in the relationship.

3. Have your client write down some negative assumptions about the other person in the relationship (Box 1 in *Powerful Relationships* chart).
4. After your client has written down some negative assumptions about the other person, ask, “If you were to act from those assumptions, what actions would you take with that other person?” (Box 2 in chart).
5. Then ask, “Based on those actions you’d take with that other person, what assumptions may that other person have about you?” (Box 3 in chart).
6. Then, “Based on those assumptions the other person has about you, what actions may that person take?” (Box 4 in chart).
7. Point out that those actions that the other person takes will likely confirm the original negative assumptions that your client has about the other person.
8. Look for patterns in this one assumption and relationship that also occur in other areas of your client's life.
9. After you have had a chance to explore this area, invite your client to choose a positive assumption and apply the same process of looking at the interdependence of each person’s assumptions and actions.
10. You may need to remind your client that they do not have to necessarily believe in the positive assumption yet.

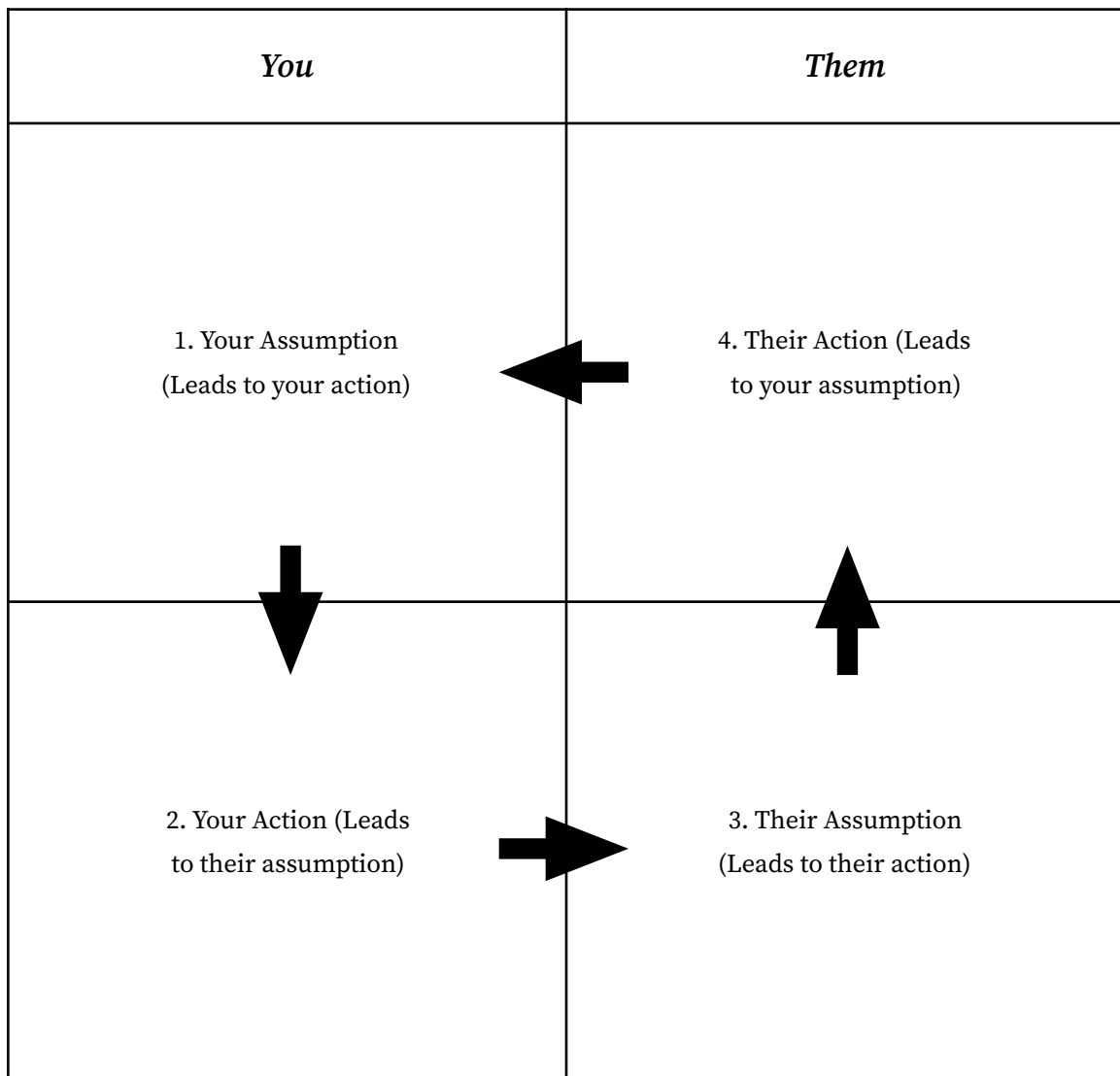
It can be difficult for a client to create a positive assumption about another person when the relationship needs improvement. The point of the exercise is not to force your client to believe the positive assumption. The point is for the client to gain awareness of how changing the assumption may impact the relationship.

11. In large part, each assumption relies on the other person also holding the same assumption and action.

If your client breaks the cycle, and can successfully stay in that cycle while the momentum of the relationship goes in a different direction, your client has mastered the art of building a powerful relationship.

12. Observe the cycle and put your coaching skills to use.

You've created a coaching-rich environment with a lot of different places to explore to bring growth and value to the session.



Leadership starts with knowing yourself and building relationships with others. *Powerful Relationships* builds on the personal growth and transformation that your client has undergone up to this point. The next stage is to apply the concepts that they have learned so well in life to

how your client relates to and communicates with others. This exercise applies the concept of the *Assumption Chart* to relationships.

This exercise works because it takes the emotional charge out of relationships that aren't functioning very well. Simply changing an assumption about someone doesn't magically make the relationship better, but it does set the stage for clients to get out of their own way and feel less of a negative emotional charge in order to build powerful relationships.

This exercise can put clients in a reflective mood, and the nature of the exercise gives them the responsibility for making their relationships strong. That responsibility is empowering, but it can also be daunting. Sometimes clients will even experience an energy dip as they process what they are learning. It's perfectly normal—and actually a good sign that you're facilitating some major internal work. It's a good idea to check in with the client a day or two after the exercise to see how things are going. This is big, important work, and this session is extremely powerful.

Empathy

The previous exercise encourages clients to take responsibility for their assumptions in relationships. This exercise empowers them to take *leadership* in those relationships. Empathy is one of the core elements of emotional intelligence. Building empathy can sometimes be a challenge, but the first step is helping your client experience empathy directly in your coaching relationship.

Much of what we do as coaches is based on empathy. I have spent whole sessions entirely empathetic, only realizing later that, “Oh, yeah, I’m here too.” Such sessions feel great. It’s as if a whole new world opens up, and you’re completely at the service of someone else.

Exploring this concept with a client aims to give a clear glimpse of that same awareness of empathy. As a life coach, you are allowing the roles to switch momentarily. You are asking your client to be empathetic *with you* sitting across the table. It’s an unusual exercise, because young people usually don’t venture guesses about what it’s really like to be older, or what it’s really like to be an adult. Because you’re sitting right there, your client’s guesses suddenly become real. Those guesses are going to be judged for accuracy (at first), and your job as a coach is to encourage your client to make those guesses and explore using imagination to enhance empathy.

By temporarily switching who is actively empathetic (you or your client), you’ve created an experience that leads to a coaching-rich environment. The next step is to resume your role as the coach, and to ask your client about the experience. Ask your client what opportunities are available to apply empathy. Empathy gives designed actions a powerful boost.

What

- **Permission to do an unusual exercise**

Asking permission is a useful tool that empowers clients to partner with you in the design of the coaching session. Asking permission is a useful frame for unusual exercises or for ones that require your client to take risks and try out something new.

- **Role reversal**

This exercise requires the client to do Level 2 listening with you for a period of time. Such a switch gives your client the direct experience of empathy, which is useful for the rest of the coaching exercise.

- **Curiosity and action**

During the exercise, you use your skills, become curious, and create action steps informed by empathy.

Why

A. Creates direct experience.

By asking your client to be empathic with you, your client has a direct experience of empathy. Such a fresh experience provides many opportunities for you to create learning and increased self-awareness for your client.

B. Is applicable to other areas.

Empathy is such a useful skill for people to change perspectives, communicate effectively, and powerfully step up into leadership. The skill used on the micro level with just one person can also be applied to other areas of your client's life.

How

1. Introduce the concept of empathy.

(Here's the quick difference between compassion and empathy: Compassion is feeling sympathetic pity and concern for the sufferings or misfortunes of others. Empathy is the ability to understand and share the feelings of others.)

2. Explain that the exercise involves switching roles for a few minutes.

You are asking your client to be empathetic with you, the coach. The purpose is for the client to get a feeling for what it is like to be empathetic with someone sitting directly across (or on the other side of the phone) from themselves.

3. **Ask permission from your client to use the exercise.**
4. **Sometimes I introduce the concepts of levels of listening, then encourage my client to take a risk in venturing guesses about what my life is like.**

What do I care about the most? What are my fears? My hopes? My dreams? My expectations?

5. **Allow your client to guess.**

Give feedback if it feels natural.

6. **Diffuse judgment.**

The important thing is that your client feels like they are flexing their empathy muscle.

7. **Switch roles back.**

Return to being the empathetic coach who is focused on your client. Ask your client about what the empathetic experience was like. What worked well? What was hard about it? What was easy about it? What did it feel like when you had to guess at first? What surprised you about your imagination?

8. **Ask questions about how it felt using Level 1 listening (for the sake of self) vs. Level 2 (for the sake of other).**

9. **Apply the *Learning*.**

20: Leadership

Chapter Overview

This chapter dives into the topic of leadership, and using the insights and growth clients have experienced during coaching sessions to design next steps.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Empathetic, Empowering, Curious, Courageous, Confident, Inspiring

Skill-Check Questions

How can I help my clients be proactive?

How does addressing leadership play out in a coaching relationship?

Leadership Projects

So often, leadership is an amorphous concept that does not really mean much to clients. Is being on an advisory board or council "leadership"? How about being the head of a book club? Community service? These leadership positions are not what we will be discussing in this section. Instead, this brand of leadership is mission-specific (*What do you want to create or accomplish?*) and project-oriented (*What are you actually going to do?*).

The foundation of leadership is not about convincing others to believe in what your client believes. It's about deciding to step up and pursue something that your client wholeheartedly believes is worth pursuing. So, which comes first in making an effective leader: the push to step up, or the raw talent of the leader? This is our version of the chicken and the egg conundrum. The short answer is *the push*. Coaching is based on the theory that establishing a vision and taking action steps develops talent. It's a growth-oriented mindset. Such an approach assumes that if there is desire and push, clients will develop the necessary skills, perspectives, or mindset shifts to gain the vital experiences they need to become great leaders.

The following leadership exercise is designed to get clients thinking about what projects would be exciting to complete. It is designed to get clients thinking about ways they can apply what they are learning to begin to support others. A leadership practice simply involves thinking intentionally about community needs and opportunities to serve within that community. It puts in place small, consistent steps that align with the client's personal growth. Current skill level doesn't matter yet. The first step is establishing a clear and exciting vision. This can start with the question "What need do you see in your community?" Then, "What kind of impact do you want to have?" The next question is "What small step (or big step!) can you take to fill that need?"

By activating this desire and vision, clients design their projects and learn to lead. These projects also design the clients. By asking "What's needed now?" and "How can I best serve?", the project dictates the skills and experience needed to move forward. The project designs the leader as the leader undertakes the project.

From a service-based leadership model, a leader is someone who serves others, creates experiences, and builds relationships. By stepping into the role of a leader, clients naturally develop the habit and skill of being proactive. Being a leader is a transformative act that has positive impacts in all other areas of life.

What

- **The need**

The leadership practice starts with your client identifying a need that they see in their support system or community. This may be as simple as a person in your client's life who needs encouragement, or as complex as designing a program to meet important needs in the community.

- **The desire**

The crux of leadership is identifying where that need meets your client's desire to take action.

- **Tangible steps**

Once the need and the desire are clear, tangible steps are necessary to realize the leadership project.

Why

A. Projects stretch leadership.

By encouraging projects for clients to accomplish outside the bounds of current thinking, you are asking them to be proactive and to stretch their leadership skills.

B. Effort leads to outcomes.

By focusing on effort that the client can control, you help clients focus on separating their abilities from the results. Whether the outcomes happen quickly or not, clients will benefit from focusing on the growth they can control and the mindsets they are able to build. When clients put in enough effort, outcomes will follow.

C. Actions and learning go beyond the life coaching program.

After the coach-client relationship completes, the leadership project—and all of the learning and tangible steps it will require—will continue to engage clients in learning,

and to stretch their skills beyond being coached. The project becomes the teacher, giving clients valuable, practical experience in getting things done.

How

1. Explain the concept of developing a leadership practice.

Say something like “As you have grown through the coaching process and learned to adopt a growth mindset, one powerful outcome is to share that with others. The concept of a leadership practice can provide a framework to determine how you want to be a leader to others, and it continues to engage your own growth mindset. What are your thoughts?”

2. Look for life coaching opportunities to create learning and increased self-awareness.

3. Plan two projects. (The workbook has space for two projects.)

It’s useful to go through the process of brainstorming and working through two different projects so your client can experience the process twice. Learning the process and how to plan out the project are just as important (and maybe even more important over time) as completing the project. A leadership project could include anything from encouraging text messages to developing a program. Arrange these goals from simple to complex, allowing your client to see that the ideas they traditionally think of as leadership ideas are achieved by starting small.

4. If your client has big ideas for programs or projects, take time to explore their vision and their future plans.

What are they motivated to accomplish? How does that motivation translate into making challenging decisions right now?

5. Hone in on 1-2 actions your client is motivated to take this week.

Then ask follow-up questions. What are they most excited about? How will this move them toward other leadership opportunities? What additional lessons do they expect to learn in the process?

6. Create momentum. (Well-designed actions are really important in this session.)

Be sure to identify one or two that are relatively easy to complete in a week. It's helpful to create momentum in the initial phases of undertaking the project. Even mini-projects are useful here. Focus not so much on creating a grand project as on giving your client the experience of action-based service leadership.

As the coach, it's helpful to recognize that the concept of a leadership practice is more about your client continuing to develop a growth mindset rather than accomplishing large tasks or achieving great success. Supporting your clients in thinking intentionally about their own growth, and fostering leadership by helping them share it with others, will serve them well in the end.

Leadership with Core Motivation

What

Throughout the coaching experience, clients explore personal growth and learning, yet the *Core Motivation* tool is especially powerful in isolating a client's *Being* or core characteristics. *Core Motivation* develops a deeper understanding of their personality, and starts using a framework to leverage strengths and overcome weaknesses.

At this point in the coaching process, you have developed a strong relationship with your client. You are aware of your client's strengths and weaknesses, you know what has worked and what has not, and you have insights into possible directions your client can explore.

With this background, it makes sense to revisit *Core Motivation* through the lens of how your client can specifically build on the strengths of their personality. By looking at personality through the leadership lens, you can help your client take those next steps in personal development to push their performance to the next level.

- **Definition of leadership**

There are many different definitions of leadership. From a coaching point of view, leadership starts with the ability to lead yourself, to do something that you believe in, and to build effective and powerful relationships with others.

- **Core motivation tool**

Core Motivation consists of nine personality types. By this point in the coaching, you and your client are very clear on which one or two types best describe your client. If needed, you can refer back to the tool and the charts in the introductory session.

- **New direction**

With the increased clarity and deepened learning, you can help your client determine new directions of action. Using the frame of personality strengths and weaknesses applied to leadership, you are giving your client a fantastic foundation to explore action

steps that will spark an upward spiral of increased leadership. This develops increased skill and ability to take on increasingly challenging projects.

Why

A. Focuses on *Being* from a leadership perspective.

The natural focus on a client pushing themselves past previous performance boundaries for personal development is the reason why *Core Motivation* combined with leadership is so powerful. Such a strength-focused discussion gives your clients increased resiliency, and taps into intrinsic motivation for the sake of self-realization. Developing ourselves is intensely enjoyable. It helps people take on increasingly more difficult challenges because we experience a sense of accomplishment and a greater capacity to do hard things.

B. Revisits a recurring theme.

The coaching process starts with your client exploring their *Core Motivation*. This session revisits that exploration. By continuing the theme of addressing personality strengths and weaknesses, you increase the chances that your client will remember to use the tool even after coaching sessions are over. Coming back to the *Core Motivation* tool periodically through the coaching relationship mimics spaced practice sessions that are proven to increase long-term working memory.

C. Leverages personality as a tool.

The *Leadership Styles with Core Motivation* exercise prepares clients to take the next leadership step in service of a larger mission. It's designed to get your client thinking about personality as a tool that can help them pursue a passion and step into leadership. The purpose is to align your client's passion and natural talent with an eye to the future. How might they apply a passion and their talents to leadership practice in their community?

How

1. Explore the *Leadership Styles with Core Motivation* material.
2. Ask your client curious questions based on using personality strengths in service of pursuing a passion.
3. Ask your client about potential blind spots and weaknesses.
4. Design action steps to explore and hone a personality strength.

<i>Challenges to Effective Leadership</i>	<i>I Tap into my Natural Leadership Style...</i>
<i>Type 1: The Perfectionist</i>	
Mistakes, errors. Pressure of having so many things to get right. Not being able to stop thinking if what I am doing is good enough. Others blaming me.	When I allow myself to have fun and enjoy. When I accept myself and the situation as it is.
<i>Type 2: The Helper</i>	
Others not recognizing me. Having too much to do for others and not having time for myself. Caring too much about relationships.	When I don't depend on the recognition of others. When I focus on action that is beneficial for myself as well as others.
<i>Type 3: The Doer</i>	
Others thinking poorly of me. Inefficiency, things getting in the way of accomplishing a goal. Pressure from ambitious goals.	When I allow myself to focus on fulfillment. When I set aside the desire to look good for the sake of accomplishing a meaningful goal.
<i>Type 4: The Artist</i>	
When others do not acknowledge how I'm feeling, or even worse, when they tell me not to feel that way. Feeling inadequate, abandoned.	When I embrace the ordinary and work to make it exceptional. When I focus on principles without getting sidetracked by emotions.

<i>Type 5: The Expert</i>	
Demands on my time and energy. People invading my space. Being proven factually wrong.	When I take action and connect with people. Thoughtful and astute, as a Type 5, I have the ability to think deeply about problems and create lasting solutions.
<i>Type 6: The Loyal Skeptic</i>	
Danger or threats. Not trusting other people. People breaking their promises or being unreliable. Problems.	As Type 6, I am magnetic when I focus on positive goals and view problems as challenges and opportunities. When I act on positive assumptions.
<i>Type 7: The Enthusiast</i>	
Thinking that something better is out there for me. Feeling trapped in something boring or painful. Too many options, not enough time, or limits on getting what I want.	As Type 7, I can use my natural ability to stir things up for a purpose. When I am willing to face negative situations and emotions and stay focused on creating positive outcomes.
<i>Type 8: The Defender</i>	
People who take advantage of me or others. Weakness in myself and others. Stupidity. Unfairness. When I sense injustice.	As Type 8, I usually have a big impact. As a natural leader, I truly shine when I take other people's needs and feelings into account.
<i>Type 9: The Peacemaker</i>	
Having people angry at me. Going along with the plans of others, even if I don't agree with them. Not being able to say no. Seeing possible problems, but ignoring them.	When I have a clearly defined goal, and I'm willing to step outside my comfort zone and take measured steps to accomplish goals.

Conclusion

Chapter Overview

Congratulations on completing your 1.0 coach training course!

This section addresses the art of completion for closing out a coaching relationship mindfully and powerfully. It also looks at the importance of celebration and looking toward the future as useful ways to complete a coaching relationship.

Essential Coach Qualities Covered

Professional

Skill-Check Questions

What are the elements that make a powerful conclusion to a coach-client relationship?

How is Celebration used as a tool for personal/professional growth?

Completion

Completion is being filled up or concluded. There is an art to completing a program well.

Looking at *Completion* as a skill involves mindfulness in assessing the past, as well as being aware of present emotions.

A successful completion is part reflection, part acknowledgment, part gratitude, and part looking forward. Here is your chance to consciously reflect on the journey you took with your client, and to complete your professional relationship. Your client has successfully completed a specific portion of your work together.

The program takes clients on a journey of self-discovery, and concludes with outlining future steps. While the *Completion* exercise is designed for clients who are concluding coaching sessions, most clients choose to continue coaching to some degree.

What

Another word for this exercise is *Reflection*. Successful *Completion* has these five elements.

- **Mindfulness**

The key ingredient to a successful *Completion* is mindfulness--an awareness of the present moment. Mindfulness also plays a role in being self-aware of thoughts and emotions while reflecting on the past.

- **Assessment**

Ask your client to do a self-assessment using a *Wheel of Life* to identify how the coaching experience has had an impact on the different areas in their life. You also ask your client to assess the program and your performance as a coach.

- **Acknowledgment**

Lean into the skill of *Acknowledgment* to empathetically recognize the character strengths you see in your client.

- **Design the Alliance**

You can do a quick *Design the Alliance* to design with your client how you want to build your relationship in the future. For example, you can make a plan to check in every three months or so to see how their Leadership Practice is going.

- **Gratitude**

Completions usually end in shared gratitude, with the coach and the client both thanking each other for a valuable experience.

Why

A. Serves as a mini-graduation ceremony.

Completion serves as a mini-graduation ceremony. It is time you set aside to reflect on past accomplishments, as well as being mindful of the present moment. Setting aside such time helps the program feel complete and your client to feel a sense of accomplishment.

B. Assessments help accountability.

An assessment provides a benchmark to judge whether or not the action was effective. The *Wheel of Life* is an easy way to help your client make a quick assessment to see how far they have come since the beginning of the program.

C. Reflects on the professional relationship. Designs the future.

A mindful *Completion* gives both you and your client the opportunity to reflect on the professional coaching relationship, what was useful, what could be better, and what you and your client have learned from your time together. *Completion* is also powerful because you have the opportunity to discuss how you can best support your client going forward, and what they want your future relationship to be like. (It's great when former clients check in from time to time!)

How

1. Consciously take a moment to reflect back on the program.

Ask your client to do the same.

2. Determine what you need to complete the program and the professional relationship.

You play an important role in your client's life. Your words matter. *Acknowledgment* is a powerful tool for moments such as these.

3. Tap into gratitude.

Thank your client.

4. Ask your client what they want to say.

5. Design the next steps with your client.

(Continue for another specified amount of time, or take a break?)

Celebration

What

From a life coaching perspective, *Celebration* is about creating a reminder of a past success for present motivation. A useful celebration reminds clients that the *effort*, not just the end result, is worth it. A well-designed celebration is fun and meaningful, but most importantly, it reminds your client of the value of work in the face of future challenges. When the tide turns and the challenges loom, having the memory of a celebration or a token sitting on a desk or a shelf acts as a reminder that all the effort and work are worth it. Celebrations should have the following elements:

- **Exploration**

Celebration starts with an exploration of the past or a recognition of a successful action taken. It can also be forward focused, looking at some point in the future once a project is completed.

- **Acknowledgment**

A celebration is a recognition of success. Useful celebrations include both an acknowledgment of the required work and effort, and the completion of the project. Sometimes, it can be difficult for clients to celebrate if there hasn't been a huge success. Reflecting and acknowledging how far they have come helps further their motivation.

- **Structure**

Sometimes celebrations can be an action, such as a party or going out to dinner. Celebrations can also be a structure, like buying something special or memorable. *Celebration* could be both. A useful celebration includes some element or structure that serves as a reminder of the success.

Why

A. Reinforces motivation styles.

Celebrations are powerful, and put clients into a motivation mindset. Having such reminders of past success and hard work helps clients feel more energized and more likely to take useful action and create systems.

B. Recognizes small accomplishments.

It is helpful to celebrate small things and small accomplishments with small celebrations. *Celebration* becomes a constantly evolving structure for an empowering belief, a positive perspective, and the value of hard work.

How

1. **Lead your client through another *Wheel of Life* exercise.**
2. **Refer back to the first *Wheel* that your client created.**
Compare the two. You'll stumble onto some great coaching questions in the process.
3. **Identify your client's biggest accomplishments, and the times when they put in the most effort.**
4. **Find a way for your client to celebrate those successes, and to recognize hard work.**

Build in a feeling of excitement, as well as an acknowledgment of the work that was required. Allow the celebration to act as a structure for *Championing* your client.

Thank You!

Thank you for being an integral part of the Coach Training EDU community. Wellness Life Coaching offers a new perspective on approaching learning and performance.

The world of coaching needs your voice and your unique experience. We invite you to share your experience, and to be involved in the community of coaches who are passionate about health and wellness. We are part of a movement to help people receive a different kind of experience and empowerment that has an exponentially positive impact on the world.

Thank you for being a part of this larger movement.

John & Amois

Acknowledgments

We are deeply grateful to bring this book and training program to life and to you. We would like to thank our entire team at Coach Training EDU for their dedication to the dream and countless hours of hard work helping make it a reality.

Special thanks to the Coach Training EDU HQ team Ashley Onusic, Antoinette Cummings, Matt Welch, and Jazzmin Johnson.

We also want to thank the team of editors whose dedication and help on making this draft have been instrumental in making this edition shine: Britt Leigh, Brittany Salsman, Rebekah Rafferty, and Teresa Gallis. We also want to thank Raimonds Roberts for being the formatting architect of the new edition.

~John & Amois